CAMBODIAN

BASIC COURSE
VOLUME TWO
UNITS 46-90

This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

By

SOMETH SUOS with the assistance of
GEORGE BEASLEY, KEM SOS,
LIP HUON and DALE PURTLE

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
WASHINGTON, D.C.
1970
FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES

Edited by
AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI
PREFACE

This volume completes the 90-unit FSI Cambodian Basic Course, of which Volume I appeared in 1966. The linguist in charge of this phase of the project has been George F. Beasley. The Cambodian language materials were written by Someth Suos, who was also the principal resource for information on usage. Dale I. Partle, formerly a member of the FSI linguist staff, gave valuable assistance in bringing this text to a state of readiness for publication.

Kem Sos, a Cambodian instructor at FSI, rendered the substantial service of transcribing the text in Cambodian script. The glossary was compiled by Lip Huon, also a member of the Cambodian teaching staff. Donna J. Janes did the final typing of the English portions. The tape recordings which accompany this volume were prepared in the FSI Language Laboratory under the direction of Gary Alley and were voiced principally by Lip Huon and Kem Sos.

The Foreign Service Institute gratefully acknowledges the financial support of the U.S. Office of Education which has made the preparation and publication of Volumes I and II of the FSI Cambodian Basic Course possible.

James R. Frith, Dean
School of Language Studies
Foreign Service Institute
UNIT 46

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. សិស្ស តែងសិចុងមុខ ដោយ?  
   Do you want to go to the market with me, Paul?

2. សិស្ស តែងសិចុងមុខ?  
   Paul

3. នឹងម៉ាន់ស មក ដោយ អាចខ្វះ  
   I seem to be out of things to eat.

4. មក ដោយ សុចសុប យោង  
   I want to go buy a little food.

5. សិស្ស តែងសិចុងមុខ យោង  
   Paul

6. នឹងម៉ាន់ស មក ដោយ អាចខ្វះ  
   Then I'll go along with you.

7. មក ដោយ សុចសុប យោង  
   I've never been to the market.

8. នឹងម៉ាន់ស មក ដោយ អាចខ្វះ  
   Where are you thinking of going?

9. នឹងម៉ាន់ស មក ដោយ អាចខ្វះ  
   Oh, I'm thinking of going to the New Market to buy food.

10. មក ដោយ សុចសុប យោង  
    Then to the Old Market to buy fruit.

11. ប៊ូជុំ យើង ...  
    Paul

12. ម៉ានាហួត យើង?  
    Well, shall we go?

13. ចុះ តែងសិចុងមុខ  
    Sarin

14. ប៊ូជុំ យើង ដោយ  
    We might as well.

    (At the New Market)

15. នឹងម៉ាន់ស មក ដោយ អាចខ្វះ  
    This is where vegetables are sold.
I plan to buy Chinese cabbage, carrots, and bean sprouts.

Are you buying anything?

I want to buy potatoes, chicken, eggs, and two kilos of beef.

Then let's get the potatoes bought. Later we can go buy the beef.

Do you like sea-food?

Oh, I like it a lot.

What all do they have?

They have crabs, oysters, and plenty of ocean fish.

And do they have clams?

Sure they do!

Then I'll buy a dozen clams.

Well, good. I have to go there to buy a few kilos of lobster anyway.

Then let's buy them, and after that go to the Old Market.
(At the Old Market)

27. មាន ឈើដុំដែលមានយោជន៍ជាច្រើនឬទេ បានឬ។ មានជីវរុញ។ ។

Paul  តំ នឹង មាន យោជន៍ ជាច្រើន ។

Paul  ខែ ដុំ ដែល មាន យោជន៍ ជាច្រើន ។

Gee, this place sure has a lot of fruit! I never realized.

Sarin  យោជន៍ នឹង មាន យោជន៍ ជាច្រើន ។

Yes, they have every kind of fruit.

Paul  មាន យោជន៍ ជាច្រើន ។

Do they have apples and cherries for sale?

Sarin  យោជន៍ នឹង មាន យោជន៍ ជាច្រើន ។

Sure they do.

Paul  បញ្ហាជីវថតថែភ្លេង មានជីវរុញ។

Then how about taking me to buy a kilo of apples, and a kilo of cherries too?

Sarin  បញ្ហាជីវថតថែភ្លេង មានជីវរុញ។

Okay.

32. មាន ក្រុមទេ?

I have to go buy a kilo of grapes anyway, but right now I want to buy bananas.

Sarin  មាន ក្រុម ទេ?

Paul  តំ នឹង មាន យោជន៍ ជាច្រើន ។

When we get through buying fruit, where else are we going?

Sarin  បញ្ហាជីវថតថែភ្លេង មានជីវរុញ។

Oh, I plan to go buy liquor and a few bottles of beer.

Paul  បញ្ហាជីវថតថែភ្លេង មានជីវរុញ។

Say, this is really great--walking around the market.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. ដែលប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ទៅមុខទេ?  Do you want to go to the market, Paul?
2. ដែលប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  Do you want to go to the movies, Paul?
3. ដែលប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  Have you ever gone to the movies, Paul?
4. ដែលប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  Have you ever been to Boston, Paul?
5. ដែលប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  Do you want to go to Boston, Paul?
6. ដែលប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  Do you want to go to the movies, Paul?
7. ដែលប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  Do you want to go to the market, Paul?

Drill B. Response

MODEL: ប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  (ក្នុង់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី)  
        ប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  

Teacher:  What are you going to the market for? (buy food)

Student:  I'm going to the market to buy food.

1. ប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  (ក្នុង់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី)
2. ប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  (ក្នុង់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី)
3. ប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  (ក្នុង់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី)
4. ប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  (ក្នុង់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី)
5. ប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  (ក្នុង់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី)

Drill C. Transformation Inserting Objects

MODEL: ដែលប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  (ក្នុង់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី)  
        ប្រឈមស្រលាញ់ស្រមាប់ជីវត្ិមន្ត្រី?  

Teacher:  Can I go along with you?  
          (to the market, buy food)

Student:  Can I go along with you to the market to buy food?
Drill D. Negative Response

MODEL: តារារាបាលដែលឈឺមន់ មានអាត់មួយ មិនឈឺមន់មួយ 
សូមសម្រេច ចាប់អារម្មណ៍ ដោយមន់មួយ 

1. តើសម្រាប់ជូនមន់មួយ មានអាត់មួយ មិនឈឺមន់មួយ? 
2. តើសម្រាប់ជូនមន់មួយ មានអាត់មួយ មិនឈឺមន់មួយ? 
3. តើសម្រាប់ជូនមន់មួយ មានអាត់មួយ មិនឈឺមន់មួយ? 
4. តើសម្រាប់ជូនមន់មួយ មានអាត់មួយ មិនឈឺមន់មួយ? 
5. តើសម្រាប់ជូនមន់មួយ មានអាត់មួយ មិនឈឺមន់មួយ? 
6. តើសម្រាប់ជូនមន់មួយ មានអាត់មួយ មិនឈឺមន់មួយ? 

Teacher: Can I go with you to the market to buy food?

Student: No, I don't want you to go with me to the market to buy food.
Drill E. Double Substitution

1. មិនបានទីតាមនឹងកន្លែងដ៏ល្អសម្រាប់ខ្លួនឯង
   I plan to go to the New Market, then to the Old Market.

2. មិនបានទីតាមនឹងកន្លែងដ៏ល្អសម្រាប់ខ្លួនឯង នៅរដ្ឋបាល
   I plan to go to New York, then to Boston.

3. មិនបានទីតាមនឹងកន្លែងដ៏ល្អសម្រាប់ខ្លួនឯង នៅក្នុងប្រទេស
   I plan to go buy apples, then to buy fish.

4. មិនបានទីតាមនឹងកន្លែងដ៏ល្អសម្រាប់ខ្លួនឯង ក្នុងប្រការប្រព្យក្រឹត
   I plan to go buy cloth, then to have a suit made.

5. មិនបានទីតាមនឹងកន្លែងដ៏ល្អសម្រាប់ខ្លួនឯង នៅអាស៊ី
   I plan to go to the market, then to the post office.

6. មិនបានទីតាមនឹងកន្លែងដ៏ល្អសម្រាប់ខ្លួនឯង នៅក្នុងខ្សែភោជនី
   I plan to go for a walk, then to the movies.

7. មិនបានទីតាមនឹងកន្លែងដ៏ល្អសម្រាប់ខ្លួនឯង នៅសេវាទូរស័ព្ទ
   I plan to eat, then to study.

8. មិនបានទីតាមនឹងកន្លែងដ៏ល្អសម្រាប់ខ្លួនឯង នៅក្នុងខ្នាត
   I plan to go to the New Market, then to the Old Market.

Drill F. Response

MODEL: កី : អ្នកកើតូលៗ នៅមុខ? (និងត្រូវការ) ពីបាន : អ្នកកើតូលៗ នៅមុខ ដែលប្រឈម

Teacher:  You're going to the market, and then where? (to the movies)

Student:  I'm going to the market, and then to the movies.

1. ាចំយោះសេរីណាមួយ នៅមុខ? (និងសម្រាប់តែអ្នក)

2. អាចយកនឹងការដំណើរ នៅមុខ? (នឹងប្រការ) 

3. អញ្ចាញឈឺឆ្លាតខ្លះ? អ្នកនឹងដំណើរអ្វី? (នឹងប្រការ) 

4. អញ្ចាញឈឺឆ្លាតស្រូស្រូ? (នឹងប្រការ)
5. រពោជ្រះដល់អស់មុនគេខុសមាន? (រូប)
6. រពោជ្រះដល់មានគេខុសមាន? (រូប)

Drill G. Response

MODEL: ប្រសិនបើក្រោយបង្ហាញមិនឃើញ? (ឈឺ)
សូមសូមសូមដោយសុំឈឺ ដោយកាទៅ

Teacher: How shall we go there? (by cyclo)

Student: I'm thinking of going by cyclo.

Drill H. Response

MODEL: ដើម្បីសួរកំណើតខ្លួនឯង ការឈ្នះច្រើនមិនឃើញ? (ការមិន)
សូមសូមដោយការមិនឃើញ

Teacher: Which is more expensive, Chinese cabbage or carrots? (carrots)

Student: Carrots are more expensive.
3. តើរ៉ូបមានកែលរើស ដើរស្រោចឬទេ? (ចាប់រៀន)

4. ប្រយោជន៍ពីមិត្តភ័ក្តីមានផ្លុត ដើរស្រោចឬទេ? (បោះឆ្នោត)

5. ដែលបង្រួសឱ្យឱ្យសិក្ខាស់ទេសិស៍ មានកែលរើស ដើរស្រោចឬទេ? (ចាប់រៀន)

Drill I. Transformation. Question from Statement.

MODEL: ប្រូ: ការមានកែលរើស ដើរស្រោចឬទេ? សូ្: ការមានកែលរើស ដើរស្រោចឬទេ?

1. ដែលបង្រួសឱ្យឱ្យសិក្ខាស់ទេសិស៍ មានកែលរើស ដើរស្រោចឬទេ?

2. ប្រយោជន៍ពីសិក្ខាស់ទេសិស៍ មានកែលរើស ដើរស្រោចឬទេ?

3. ប្រយោជន៍ពីមិត្តភ័ក្តីមានផ្លុត មានកែលរើស ដើរស្រោចឬទេ?

4. ប្រយោជន៍ពីសិក្ខាស់ទេសិស៍ មានកែលរើស ដើរស្រោចឬទេ?

5. ការមានកែលរើស ដើរស្រោចឬទេ?

Drill J. Double Substitution

In that case, let's finish the buying, then go to the Old Market.

In that case let's finish doing it, then go to eat.

In that case, let's finish studying, then go for a walk.
4. សូមសិនឹងចិត្តសិនឹងប្រតិបត្តិ ដើម្បីប្រណែរសម្រាប់ប្រការ។

5. សូមសិនឹងមកចូលប្រការ ដើម្បីប្រណែរសម្រាប់ប្រការ។

6. សូមសិនឹងអាហារដែល បានប្រណែរសម្រាប់ប្រការ។

7. សូមសិនឹងចិត្តឬទឹកឬប្រការ ដើម្បីប្រណែរសម្រាប់ប្រការ។

In that case, let's finish buying, then go to the movies.

In that case, let's finish eating, then go to bed.

In that case, let's finish dressing, then go to the market.

In that case, let's finish buying, then go to the Old Market.
UNIT 47

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. សារៈ អី សេីមុំ មុំ មិត្តស្រី?  
   **Sareth**
   Well Sarin, have you eaten yet?

2. សារៈ ខ្ញុំ ទេ  
   **Sarin**
   No, I haven't.

3. អ៊ុនកើតតម្រុញ់ ក្រុមាតេស្តី មិត្តស្រី?  
   **Sareth**
   Then how about going to eat with me (once)?

4. អ៊ុន ជី កែវរាំ?  
   **Sarin**
   Sure! Where were you thinking of going?

5. អ្នក ពិតជាកើតតម្រុញ់ ក្រុមាតេស្តី  
   **Sareth**
   Oh, I was thinking of Chinese food. Do you like Chinese food?

6. អ្នក ពិតជាកើតតម្រុញ់ ក្រុមាតេស្តី  
   **Sarin**
   I like Chinese food a lot.

7. អ្នក ពិតជាកើតតម្រុញ់ ក្រុមាតេស្តី  
   **Sareth**
   Which restaurant were you thinking of going to?

8. អ៊ុនកើតតម្រុញ់ ក្រុមាតេស្តី  
   **Sarin**
   Have you ever been to eat at the 'Kok Meng'?

9. សារៈ ខ្ញុំ ទេ?  
   **Sarin**
   No, I've never been there.

10. អ្នក ពិតជាកើតតម្រុញ់ ក្រុមាតេស្តី  
    **Sareth**
    Is the food there good?

11. អ្នក ពិតជាកើតតម្រុញ់ ក្រុមាតេស្តី  
    **Sarin**
    As far as I'm concerned, it's the only place for Chinese food--it's the best.

12. សារៈ ខ្ញុំ ទេ?  
    **Sarin**
    In that case, I guess I'd like to
go try it there once.

(At the Kok Meng Restaurant)

13. បោះ ឈុំ ឈប់ៗ?  
     **Sareth**  
     Well, what do you want to eat?

14. មិនអាចប្រាប់ភាពឈុំស្តីឈុំ  
     ឈុំតែងប្រឈុំ យឺត់?  
     **Sarin**  
     It's up to you Sareth-- you're the one who knows how to choose dishes.

15. សិនដូចយឺត់ឈុំឈុំស្តីឈុំ  
     រ៉ិះស្តីឈុំ តើមាន  
     មិនអាចប្រឈុំឈុំបាន?  
     **Sareth**  
     Then I think I'll order fried beef with tomatoes, deep fried fish, roast duck, and sour soup.

16. បោះ ឈុំ ឈប់ៗទៀត?  
     **Sarin**  
     Do you want anything else to eat?

17. បោះ ឈុំ ឈប់ៗទៀត?  
     **Sarin**  
     Gee, I'd think that would be plenty.

18. បោះ ឈុំ ឈប់ៗទៀត?  
     **Sareth**  
     And for dessert, what would you like?

19. បោះ ឈុំ ឈប់ៗទៀត?  
     **Sarin**  
     I'd like some fruit, like bananas, mangosteens, or 'lamuts', for example.

20. បោះ ឈុំ ឈប់ៗទៀត?  
     **Sareth**  
     Just let me order it for you.
DRILLS

Drill A.  Positive Response

**MODEL:** ការើ បានអាចធ្វើបាន ណាម្ម? និងឈ្មោះដែលចិញ្ឆំបាន ការ  

Teacher: Well, have you eaten yet?  

Student: Yes, I've eaten already.

1. ការើបានអាចធ្វើបាន ណាម្ម?  
2. ការើបានអាចធ្វើបាន ណាម្ម?  
3. ការើបានអាចធ្វើបាន ណាម្ម?  
4. ការើបានអាចធ្វើបាន ណាម្ម?  
5. ការើបានអាចធ្វើបាន ណាម្ម?  

Drill B.  Negative Response

**MODEL:** ការើ សីបុនបានអាចធ្វើបាន ណាម្ម? និងឈ្មោះដែលចិញ្ឆំបាន ការ  

Teacher: Well, have you eaten yet?  

Student: No, I haven't eaten yet.

1. ការើសីបុនបានអាចធ្វើបាន ណាម្ម?  
2. ការើសីបុនបានអាចធ្វើបាន ណាម្ម?  
3. ការើសីបុនបានអាចធ្វើបាន ណាម្ម?  
4. ការើសីបុនបានអាចធ្វើបាន ណាម្ម?  
5. ការើសីបុនបានអាចធ្វើបាន ណាម្ម?  

Drill C.  Substitution

1. ប្តូរភាពជាច្រើនប្រាប់ប្រាប់ ណាម្ម?  

Which restaurant were you planning to go eat at?
Which store were you planning to go shop at?

Which place were you planning to go shop at?

Which place shall we plan to go have the car fixed at?

Which garage shall we plan to go have the car fixed at?

Which garage were you planning have the car fixed at?

Which place were you planning to have the car fixed at?

Which place were you planning to go eat at?

Which restaurant were you planning to go eat at?

Drill D. Response


Teacher: Is the Chinese food there good?

Student: In my opinion, it's the only place for Chinese food-- it's the best.
5.  ដែលអ្នករស់នៅ?  

Drill E.  Response

MODEL:  នៅ:  អ្នកមានអាហារណ៍  
        ប្រឈមប្រាក់? (មាន់ទៅ)  
        ដែល:  មានអាហារណ៍  
        ប្រឈមប្រាក់បំផុត?  

1.  អ្នកមានអាហារណ៍ មន្ត្រីក្រហម?  
    (មាន់ទៅ)  
2.  អ្នកមានអាហារណ៍ ឆ្រូរចិន?  
    (មាន់ទៅ)  
3.  អ្នកមានអាហារណ៍ បារៀម?  
    (មាន់ទៅ)  
4.  អ្នកមានអាហារណ៍ មៃឃុម?  
    (មាន់ទៅ)  
5.  អ្នកមានអាហារណ៍ ត្រូព្រៃ?  
    (មាន់ទៅ)

Teacher:  I like fried beef with tomatoes.  
(order, a dish)

Student:  Then I'll order a dish of fried beef with tomatoes.

Drill F.  Response

MODEL:  នៅ:  អ្នកមានអាហារណ៍  
        ប្រឈមប្រាក់? (មាន់ទៅ)  
        ដែល:  មានអាហារណ៍  
        ប្រឈមប្រាក់បំផុត?  

1.  អ្នកមានអាហារណ៍ មន្ត្រីក្រហម?  
    (មាន់ទៅ)  
2.  អ្នកមានអាហារណ៍ ឆ្រូរចិន?  
    (មាន់ទៅ)

Teacher:  I don't like fried beef with tomatoes.  (order)

Student:  In that case I won't order fried beef with tomatoes.
3. នៅពេត់ក្នុងការប្រយោជន៍ (ផ្កាយ)
4. ស្វែងរកឲ្យកើត់មកវិញ (ផ្កាយ)
5. និយាយជាក្រុមប្រភេទទឹកអូន់ (ផ្កាយ)

Drill G. Response

MODEL: ប្រសិនបើជឿសិនឲ្យប្រឹក្សាសិនពីកំណែរីះងារ ត្រូវបាន

Teacher: Are four kinds of food enough?
Student: I say four kinds of food are plenty.

Drill H. Response

MODEL: ថ្មីៗស្នើរឲ្យឆ្លាត់ក្រុមមនុស្ស

Teacher: I'll order four kinds of food.
Student: Four kinds of food are enough.
Drill I. Response

MODEL: តើ អ្នកចុះចុះចុះ ស្រី? (ប៉ុន្មាន)

Teacher: What food would you like to eat? (choose)

Student: It's up to you. You're the one who knows how to choose dishes.

1. ស្រីមួយណាក្នុងជេសារ? (ប៉ុន្មាន)
2. ស្រីមួយណាក្នុងប្រភេទអ្វី? (ប៉ុន្មាន)
3. ស្រីមួយណាក្នុងស្រោមអ្វី? (ប៉ុន្មាន)
4. ស្រីមួយណាក្នុងខ្លះអ្វី? (ប៉ុន្មាន)
5. ស្រីមួយណាក្នុងប្រភេទអ្វី? (ប៉ុន្មាន)

Drill J. Correlation. (Add the proper classifier)

MODEL: តើ ស្រីមួយណាក្នុងជេសារ? (ប៉ុន្មាន)

Teacher: I saw some teachers there. (three)

Student: I saw three teachers there.

1. ស្រីមួយណាក្នុងជេសារ(៦) (ប៉ុន្មាន)
2. ស្រីមួយណាក្នុងជេសារ(៦) (ប៉ុន្មាន)
3. ស្រីមួយណាក្នុងជេសារ(៦) (ប៉ុន្មាន)
4. ស្រីមួយណាក្នុងជេសារ(៦) (ប៉ុន្មាន)
5. ស្រីមួយណាក្នុងជេសារ(៦) (ប៉ុន្មាន)
6. ស្រីមួយណាក្នុងជេសារ(៦) (ប៉ុន្មាន)
7. ស្រីមួយណាក្នុងជេសារ(៦) (ប៉ុន្មាន)
UNIT 48
BASIC DIALOGUE

1. Do you want to go see a movie with me?
Sareth
Do you want to go see a movie with me?
There's a rather interesting one on.

2. Where's it playing?
Sarin

3. It's playing at the Ciné Lux.
Sareth

4. Is it a French film, or an American film?
Sarin

5. It's a Swedish film.
Sareth

6. My younger brother just saw it--he says it's very good.
Sarin

7. In that case I guess I'd like to see it too.
Sareth

8. Is the Ciné Lux Theater far?
Sarin

9. No, it's not far. Especially if we go from here.
Sareth

10. Which way do we go?
Sarin

11. Well, from here, you drive straight along Preah-Sihanouk Avenue...
Sareth

12. When you get to the Independence Monument, turn left straight along Norodom Boulevard.
Sarin
14. សរុា ចុះយើងទេ?  
Sarin  
So what time were you planning to go?

15. តើអ្នកទេឈ្មោះរូបភាព ដោយ ប្រុសប្រុស?  
Sareth  
Me? I'd like to go a little early (before dark), because it's easier to buy tickets.

16. កុម្មុយនារីរៀនរបស់លោក បំផុត?  
Sarin  
What time does the movie start?

17. រឿងនេះមាននៅះឬ?  
Sareth  
At 6:30.

18. អ្នកចង់ឈ្នះនៅះពេលណា?  
Sarin  
Then could we go at 5:30?

19. ដែល មេឃីតអ្នកបំផុត បាន?  
Sareth  
Sure we could. But as far as I'm concerned, I'd like to go at 5:00.

20. អ្នកចង់មកឈ្នះណា ៗ?  
Sarin  
Let's go at 5:00 then.

21. ប្រមូលឬ...  
Sareth  
What about the tickets, ....

22. កុម្មុយនារីមានដែលបាន?  
Sareth  
Do you want to get loges, or first-class tickets?

23. អ្នកចង់ការអារម្មណ៍ជាច្រើន ឬ?  
Sarin  
Oh, first class is fine.

24. អ្នកមិនចង់ឈ្នះតូចទៀតមួយ?  
Sareth  
Could you buy one for me too?

25. រាជធានី ឬ  
Sareth  
Sure.
DRILLS

Drill A. Response

MODEL: ដែល រជ្ជបត្របញ្ជាក់? (ដាក់ឈ្មោះដែលត្រូវ) តែងទៅទៅជាមួយទីក្រុងត្រូវបាន ការពារតែងទៅទៅ និង និង រជ្ជបត្របញ្ជាក់?  (ឆ្នាំថ្ងៃ) 2. ដែលរជ្ជបត្របញ្ជាក់? (ដាក់ឈ្មោះសាលារៀន) 3. ដែលរជ្ជបត្របញ្ជាក់? (ដាក់ឈ្មោះភ្នំ) 4. ដែលរជ្ជបត្របញ្ជាក់? (ដាក់ឈ្មោះឈ្មោះ) 5. ដែលរជ្ជបត្របញ្ជាក់? (ដាក់ឈ្មោះតែងទៅទៅ)

Teacher: Where is it playing? (at the Ciné Lux)

Student: It’s playing at the Ciné Lux Theater.

Drill B. Substitution

1. បង្កើតសម្រាប់ចុះក្នុងការបញ្ជាក់ រជ្ជបត្របញ្ជាក់? 2. បង្កើតផ្គត់ផ្គង់បញ្ជាក់សាលារៀន និង និង រជ្ជបត្របញ្ជាក់ 3. បង្កើតផ្គត់ផ្គង់បញ្ជាក់សាលារៀន និង និង រជ្ជបត្របញ្ជាក់ 4. បង្កើតផ្គត់ផ្គង់បញ្ជាក់សាលារៀន និង និង រជ្ជបត្របញ្ជាក់ 5. បង្កើតផ្គត់ផ្គង់បញ្ជាក់សាលារៀន និង និង រជ្ជបត្របញ្ជាក់ 6. បង្កើតផ្គត់ផ្គង់បញ្ជាក់សាលារៀន និង និង រជ្ជបត្របញ្ជាក់

My younger brother just saw it. He says it’s very interesting.

My younger brother just saw it. He says it’s very long.

My younger brother just finished it. He says it’s very long.

My younger brother just finished it. He says it’s very difficult.

My younger brother just saw it. He says it’s very difficult.

My younger brother just saw it. He says it’s very interesting.
Drill C. Substitution

1. តើអ្នករង្វាន់ក្នុងមេឃ?  
What time do they start playing?

2. តើអ្នកសុទ្ធភាពក្នុងមេឃ?  
What time do they start doing it?

3. តើអ្នកបែងប្រាវ់ក្នុងមេឃ?  
What time do we start doing it?

4. តើអ្នកសុបិន្តិសារ៖  
We start doing it at four o'clock.

5. តើអ្នកមានសុបិន្តិសារ៖  
We start playing at four o'clock.

6. តើអ្នករង្វាន់ក្នុងមេឃ?  
They start playing at four o'clock.

7. តើអ្នករង្វាន់ក្នុងមេឃ?  
What time do they start playing?

Drill D. Response

MODEL: តើ: អ្នកចូលសុម្ឋោះប្រាខេះ? (២)  
Teacher: Can we go at five o'clock? (four)

ងាយ: យើង ាំងសូម្ឋោះ ប្រាខេះ ប៉ុន្តែ មានកាខ្សោះ  
Student: Sure we can. But as for me,  
I'd rather go at four.

1. តើអ្នកបែងប្រាវ់?  

(២៤ម៉ូតូ)  

2. តើអ្នកសុបិន្តិសារ៖  

(២៤ម៉ូតូ)  

3. តើអ្នកមានសុបិន្តិសារ៖  

(២៤ម៉ូតូ)  

4. តើអ្នកឈ្នះចាប់ផ្តើម?  

(២៤ម៉ូតូ)  

5. តើអ្នកឈ្នះចាប់ផ្តើម?  

(២៤ម៉ូតូ)  

Drill E. Response

MODEL: តើ: អ្នកបែងប្រាវ់សម្រាប់  
Teacher: How long have they been playing? (two hours)

ងាយ: យើង បែងប្រាវ់សម្រាប់  
Student: Oh, they just started playing  
two hours ago.

(២៤ម៉ូតូ)
1. តើមានបែបអ្វីដែលអ្នកចង់ធ្វើឥឡូវនេះ?  (វិឃាអេរ)
   តើមានបែបអ្វីដែលអ្នកចង់ធ្វើឥឡូវនេះ?  (វិឃាអេរ)
2. តើមានក់ដែលអ្នកចង់ធ្វើឥឡូវនេះ?  (វិឃាអេរ)
   តើមានក់ដែលអ្នកចង់ធ្វើឥឡូវនេះ?  (វិឃាអេរ)
3. តើមានអ្វីខ្លះដែលអ្នកចង់ធ្វើឥឡូវនេះ?  (វិឃាអេរ)
4. តើមានអ្វីខ្លះដែលអ្នកចង់ធ្វើឥឡូវនេះ?  (វិឃាអេរ)

Drill F. Response

MODEL: អ្នកចង់ធ្វើអ្វីខ្លះឥឡូវនេះ? (វិឃាអេរ)
វិធី: ថ្មី ដើម្បីបង្កើតការបម្រើប្រាស់ ក្នុងឆ្នាំនេះ.

Teacher: Are they going to start playing right now? (another hour)

Student: No, it'll be another hour before they start playing.

Teacher: តើអ្នកចង់ធ្វើអ្វីឆ្លង់ឥឡូវនេះ? (វិឃាអេរ)

Student: យ៉ាងណាងមិនឈប់មានបន្ថយឈ្មោះអំពីការបង្កើតក្នុងឆ្នាំនេះ.

Teacher: Me, I'd like to go at five o'clock.

Student: Well, let's go at five, then.
Drill H. Transformation

MODEL:  កេះ : ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី

1. ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ លើកព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី

2. ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី

3. ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី

4. ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី

5. ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី ស្លឹកធ្វើាចំណាយ ឡើងព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ ស្តីមែន ធ្វើអាចឈ្មោះកំពូល ស្រី

Drill I. Expansion

1. អ៊ី អ៊ី? អើ អើ?
2. អ៊ី អ៊ី? អើ អើ?
3. អ៊ី អ៊ី? អើ អើ?
4. អ៊ី អ៊ី? អើ អើ?
5. អ៊ី អ៊ី? អើ អើ?
6. អ៊ី អ៊ី? អើ អើ?

Can you buy them?
Can you buy them for me?
Could you please buy them for me?
Could you please buy tickets for me?
Could you please buy first-class tickets for me?
Could you please buy two first-class tickets for me?
Drill J. Reduction

1. អាល់បំពាក់បោះពុម្ពជាមួយស្ថានភាពខ្ពស់ ។
   Could you please buy two first-class tickets for me?

2. អាល់បំពាក់បោះពុម្ពជាមួយស្ថានភាពខ្ពស់ ។
   Could you please buy two tickets for me?

3. អាល់បំពាក់បោះពុម្ពជាមួយស្ថានភាពខ្ពស់ ។
   Can you buy two tickets for me?

4. អាល់បំពាក់បោះពុម្ពជាមួយស្ថានភាពខ្ពស់ ។
   Can you buy two for me?

5. អាល់បំពាក់បោះពុម្ពជាមួយស្ថានភាពខ្ពស់ ។
   Can you buy two?

6. អាល់បំពាក់បោះពុម្ពជាមួយស្ថានភាពខ្ពស់ ។
   Can you buy them?
UNIT 49

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. 滞后сяនឹងកុងណោត... តើបានទេ?  Sareth
Here’s the Ciné Lux Theater...  do you remember it?

2. ឱ្យឨ្ហា យើងបកប្រែស្ថានទ្រង់ បើប្រើប្រាស់កុងណោត ្មត្តិការដែល  Sareth
Sure I do.  I’ve been here two  or three times to see movies,  as a matter of fact.

3. បង្កើតកំពុងស្ងួត កុមារ ឈឺឈឺឈឺ  Sareth
Then stay here and wait for me a  minute.  I’ll go buy the tickets.

4. និធី ឈត  Sareth
Go ahead.

(Later on)

5. នែងបង្កើតអ្នកបង្កើត ឬនឹង ឈឺឈឺឈឺ?  Sareth
I’ve bought the tickets.  You want to  go in now?

6. ឬអ្នកបង្កើត នឹងឈឺឈឺឈឺ មិនឈឺឈឺឈឺ?  Sareth
Don’t hurry!  It’s hot in  the theater.

7. អ្នកតើបង្កើតឈឺឈឺឈឺចូល ទាំងអស់ទាយឈឺឈឺឈឺ?  Sareth
Then let’s wait until 6:15 before  we go in.

8. មេឃឹងសេឡូស ឈត  Sareth
Yes, that would be good.

9. តើអ្នកចូលឈឺឈឺឈឺ ណែនឹងឈឺឈឺឈឺ?  Sareth
Shall we go get something  to eat, until it’s time?

10. មានអេរីដ៏ហ៊ុនមានឈឺឈឺឈឺ?  Sareth
Is there a noodle shop nearby?
11. តើមានឈឺចាក់អោយ?  
Sareth  
Sure there is.

12. មានបារីការីដែលយើងសុំ  
Sarin  
Then shall we go eat a bowl of noodles (each) first?

13. ត្រូវការ។  
Sareth  
Let's go.

(Later on)

14. គេចង់ចាប់ពីបីដោយប្រឈម?  
Sareth  
It's time. You ready?

15. សួរ៍។  
Sarin  
Yes, I'm ready.

(After the movie)

16. តើមិនមានដើម្បីបែបបម្រឹង?  
Sareth  
Well, did you like the movie?

17. ប្រភេទនេះ។  
Sarin  
I certainly did. That movie was both comic and sad.

18. តើអ្នកសុំបែបអ្វី?  
Sareth  
And (what did you think of) the leading actor?

19. ប្រភេទនេះ ។  
Sarin  
He was handsome, and a good actor too.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. ដែលអ្នកអាចកំណត់ឈើកូនបាល់ជាអ្វុកល្អិតល្អិតមួយមួយទៀតមិនឬ?  
   Here's the Ciné Lux Theater. Do you remember it?

2. ដែលអ្នកអាចកំណត់ឈើកូនបាល់ជាអ្វុកល្អិតល្អិតមួយមួយទៀតមិនឬ?  
   Here's the Ciné Theater. Do you recognize it?

3. ដែលអ្នកអាចកំណត់ឈើកូនបាល់ជាអ្វុកល្អិតល្អិតមួយមួយទៀតមិនឬ?  
   Here's my older brother. Do you recognize him?

4. ដែលអ្នកអាចកំណត់ឈើកូនបាល់ជាអ្វុកល្អិតល្អិតមួយមួយទៀតមិនឬ?  
   Here's my older brother. Have you ever met him?

5. ដែលអ្នកអាចកំណត់ឈើកូនបាល់ជាអ្វុកល្អិតល្អិតមួយមួយទៀតមិនឬ?  
   Here's my older brother. Do you remember him?

6. ដែលអ្នកអាចកំណត់ឈើកូនបាល់ជាអ្វុកល្អិតល្អិតមួយមួយទៀតមិនឬ?  
   Here's the palace. Do you remember it?

7. ដែលអ្នកអាចកំណត់ឈើកូនបាល់ជាអ្វុកល្អិតល្អិតមួយមួយទៀតមិនឬ?  
   Here's the Ciné Lux Theater. Do you remember it?

Drill B. Response

MODEL: តើ អ្នកអាចកំណត់ឈើកូនបាល់ជាអ្វុកល្អិតល្អិតមួយមួយទៀតមិនឬ?  (រាងការ)  
   Teacher: Here's the Ciné Lux. Do you remember it? (see movies)

   Student: Sure! I've been here to see movies several times, as a matter of fact.

1. តើ អ្នកអាចកំណត់ឈើកូនបាល់ជាអ្វុកល្អិតល្អិតមួយមួយទៀតមិនឬ?  (រាងការ)  
2. តើ អ្នកអាចកំណត់ឈើកូនបាល់ជាអ្វុកល្អិតល្អិតមួយមួយទៀតមិនឬ?  (រាងការ)  
3. តើ អ្នកអាចកំណត់ឈើកូនបាល់ជាអ្វុកល្អិតល្អិតមួយមួយទៀតមិនឬ?  (រាងការ)
Drill C. Substitution

1. Don't hurry! It's hot in the movie theater.
2. Don't hurry! It's dirty in the movie theater.
3. No hurry! It's dirty in the restaurant.
4. No hurry! It's hot in the restaurant.
5. No hurry! It's hot in the classroom.
6. Don't hurry! It's hot in the classroom.
7. Don't hurry! It's hot in the movie theater.
8. Don't hurry! It's hot in the movie theater.

Drill D. Substitution

1. Then let's wait until six-fifteen to go in.
2. Then let's wait until seven-thirty to go in.
3. Then let's wait until seven-thirty to start.
4. ដើម្បីមិនបង្កើតការបកប្រែដទៃទៀត

5. គំនិតផ្សេងទៀត

6. ប្រាក់អនុសិafxប្រកួតប្រជែង

7. រយៈពេលត្រូវប្លូងប្រជែង

8. នូវការៗថ្មីទៀត

9. ប្រាក់ផ្សេងទៀត

Then let's eat a little something first, before we start.

Then let's eat a little something first, until it's time.

Then let's look for something to eat, until it's time.

Then let's look for something to eat, before we go in.

Then let's wait until eight o'clock to go inside.

Then let's wait until six-fifteen to go in.

Drill E. Equivalence

MODEL: បំផ្លាញជាច្រើនសមាជិកនេះ គឺជាអាយុអំរីមាត្រផ្សេងទៀត

Teacher: Don't go in before six-fifteen.

Student: Wait until six-fifteen, then go in.
Drill F. Equivalence

MODEL: ជ្រុងជាតិមានស្មុគស្មាញបំផុត ដូចជាទំនាក់ទំនងដែលមានសំខាន់បំផុត។

1. កូរ៉េមានស្មុគស្មាញបំផុត ដូចជាទំនាក់ទំនងដែលមានសំខាន់បំផុត។
2. អាមេរិកមានស្មុគស្មាញបំផុត ដូចជាទំនាក់ទំនងដែលមានសំខាន់បំផុត។
3. អ៊ីតាលីមានស្មុគស្មាញបំផុត ដូចជាទំនាក់ទំនងដែលមានសំខាន់បំផុត។
4. ចិនមានស្មុគស្មាញបំផុត ដូចជាទំនាក់ទំនងដែលមានសំខាន់បំផុត។
5. វៀតណាមានស្មុគស្មាញបំផុត ដូចជាទំនាក់ទំនងដែលមានសំខាន់បំផុត។
6. កាលសម័យមានស្មុគស្មាញបំផុត ដូចជាទំនាក់ទំនងដែលមានសំខាន់បំផុត។

Teacher: Wait until six-fifteen, then go in.

Student: Don't go in before six-fifteen.

Drill G. Substitution

1. អ្នកអាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវចំពង់អារម្មណ៍? ឬ អាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវបាត់អារម្មណ៍?
2. អ្នកអាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវចំពង់ស្វាគមន៍? ឬ អាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវបាត់ស្វាគមន៍?
3. អ្នកអាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវចំពង់ស្រំបាលអារម្មណ៍? ឬ អាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវបាត់ស្រំបាលអារម្មណ៍?
4. អ្នកអាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវចំពង់ការបង្កើតប្រតិបត្តិការ? ឬ អាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវបាត់ការបង្កើតប្រតិបត្តិការ?
5. អ្នកអាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវចំពង់បង្កើតសេចក្តីសម្រាប់អារម្មណ៍? ឬ អាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវបាត់សេចក្តីសម្រាប់អារម្មណ៍?
6. អ្នកអាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវចំពង់បង្កើតម័សអារម្មណ៍? ឬ អាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវបាត់ម័សអារម្មណ៍?
7. អ្នកអាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវចំពង់បង្កើតមូលសិប្បនិមិត្ត? ឬ អាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវបាត់មូលសិប្បនិមិត្ត?
8. អ្នកអាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវចំពង់បង្កើតអារម្មណ៍? ឬ អាចមេត្តើតាមតម្រូវបាត់អារម្មណ៍?

Then let's go eat a bowl of noodles (each) first, OK?

Then let's go eat a dish of beef-and-tomato (each) first, OK?

Then let's order a dish of beef-and-tomato (each) first, OK?

Then let's order a dish of fried fish (each) first, OK?

Then let's order a dish of sour soup (each) first, OK?

Then let's order one kind of food (each) first, OK?

Then let's order a bowl of noodles (each) first, OK?

Then let's go eat a bowl of noodles.
Cambodian Basic Course

Drill H. Response

MODEL: សិប្សាចំបាយសីប្សាចំបាយ បើសីប្សាចំបាយ (ការឈ្មោះ, ការពារ) បម្លែង: តើឆ្លាញ់ចំបាយ បើអ្នករីករាលដាលនេះ តើធំសួរឯកជន? (តើត្រូវ, បេូស្កុត)

1. បំដែរសីប្សាចំបាយសីប្សាចំបាយ តើ? (តើត្រូវ, បេូស្កុត)
2. បំដែរសីប្សាចំបាយសីប្សាចំបាយ បើសីប្សាចំបាយ (តើត្រូវ, បេូស្កុត)
3. បំដែរសីប្សាចំបាយសីប្សាចំបាយ បើសីប្សាចំបាយ តើ? (តើត្រូវ, បេូស្កុត)
4. បំដែរសីប្សាចំបាយសីប្សាចំបាយ បើសីប្សាចំបាយ តើ? (តើត្រូវ, បេូស្កុត)
5. បំដែរសីប្សាចំបាយសីប្សាចំបាយ បើសីប្សាចំបាយ តើ? (តើត្រូវ, បេូស្កុត)

Drill I. Transformation

MODEL: តើទីទំនើបដែលសីប្សាចំបាយ បាន បានដើម្បីកើតមក សីប្សាចំបាយ (ការឈ្មោះ, ការពារ)

1. តើទីទំនើបដែលសីប្សាចំបាយ បាន បាន ដើម្បីកើតមក សីប្សាចំបាយ
2. តើទីទំនើបដែលសីប្សាចំបាយ បាន បាន ដើម្បីកើតមក សីប្សាចំបាយ
3. តើទីទំនើបដែលសីប្សាចំបាយ បាន បាន ដើម្បីកើតមក សីប្សាចំបាយ

Teacher: Well, did you like the movie? (comic, sad)

Teacher: The movie was comic, and at the same time sad.

Student: I certainly did. It was both comic and sad.

Student: I mean it was very comic, and also very sad.
Drill J. Transformation

MODEL: តើ ស្លៀកទឹកក្រុងទៅទីក្រុងសៀមរាបុំ ប្រើពណ៌សម្រាប់អ្នក មានឈុតប្រក្មេះទៅនឹងក្រុងសៀមរាបុំ ស្លៀកទឹកក្រុងសៀមរាបុំ

1. ស្លៀកទឹកក្រុងសៀមរាបុំអាចទៅទីក្រុងប្រុង ប្រើពណ៌សម្រាប់អ្នក មានឈុតប្រក្មេះទៅនឹងក្រុងសៀមរាបុំ ស្លៀកទឹកក្រុងសៀមរាបុំ
2. ស្លៀកទឹកក្រុងសៀមរាបុំអាចទៅទីក្រុងប្រុង ប្រើពណ៌សម្រាប់អ្នក មានឈុតប្រក្មេះទៅនឹងក្រុងសៀមរាបុំ ស្លៀកទឹកក្រុងសៀមរាបុំ
3. ស្លៀកទឹកក្រុងសៀមរាបុំអាចទៅទីក្រុងប្រុង ប្រើពណ៌សម្រាប់អ្នក មានឈុតប្រក្មេះទៅនឹងក្រុងសៀមរាបុំ ស្លៀកទឹកក្រុងសៀមរាបុំ
4. ស្លៀកទឹកក្រុងសៀមរាបុំអាចទៅទីក្រុងប្រុង ប្រើពណ៌សម្រាប់អ្នក មានឈុតប្រក្មេះទៅនឹងក្រុងសៀមរាបុំ ស្លៀកទឹកក្រុងសៀមរាបុំ
5. ស្លៀកទឹកក្រុងសៀមរាបុំអាចទៅទីក្រុងប្រុង ប្រើពណ៌សម្រាប់អ្នក មានឈុតប្រក្មេះទៅនឹងក្រុងសៀមរាបុំ ស្លៀកទឹកក្រុងសៀមរាបុំ

Teacher: ខ្ញុំបានដឹងថាលេខមួយ ឱ្យសុំឈុតដែលត្រូវ។ ខ្ញុំចង់ឱ្យអ្នកត្រូវបានដឹងថាលេខមួយ ឱ្យសុំឈុតដែលត្រូវ។

Student: ខ្ញុំបានដឹងថាលេខមួយ ឱ្យសុំឈុតដែលត្រូវ។ ខ្ញុំចង់ឱ្យអ្នកត្រូល់ថាលេខមួយ ឱ្យសុំឈុតដែលត្រូវ។
UNIT 50

NARRATION

1. Every weekend my friends and I always go out somewhere together for fun.
2. Sometimes we all go swimming together.
3. Other times we all go hunting or fishing.
4. If we don’t go anywhere (out of town), we all go out together in town.

5. Ordinarily, on Saturday or Sunday, we don’t eat at home.
6. We always go eat at various restaurants in the city of Phnom Penh.
7. Sometimes we go eat at French restaurants; other times we go eat at Chinese restaurants.
8. Me, I like sea food very much, but my friends don’t like sea food.
9. They like meat and vegetables.

10.

11.

12.

13.
10. In order to amuse ourselves, we always go to see movies or plays.
11. Not knowing how to speak English, my friend doesn't like to see American films.
12. But he likes to see French ones very much.
13. As for me, I like American ones a lot.

14. បីនបុរស សូរាជាសាកល្បងទរឹមជូនគ្នាខ្លែងមិនដឹងភាសាខ្មែរ ដែលកំពុងធ្វើជីវិតគ្នានៅអាស៊ី។
15. ដូច្ចជាញាកុវត្ត សូរាជាសាកល្បងល្អបំផុត។ បីនបុរសមើលអូសជីវិតដោយសីរដែលមានកូនបុរស។
16. សូរាជាសាកល្បង ឬជីវិតដែលមានកូនបុរសជាកូនបុរសដែលបានធ្វើឈ្នះ។
17. ត្រូវបានបង្កើតជាស្ថាបនិកជាតិ។
18. ខ្លះប្រជាជនសូរាជាសាកល្បងផ្សំបានជាស្ថាបនិកជាតិ។

14. Once in a while, we go to see a German or Indian film that has subtitles in French or Cambodian.
15. As for the plays, we don't like classical plays. But we do like modern plays a lot.
16. Speaking of movies again, my friends like any one that is comic or has shooting in it.
17. I don't like films like that.
18. I like any film that has some relationship with history.

19. គេទើបឱ្យសូរាជាសាកល្បងមានប្រភេទមិនសូរាជាសាកល្បង។
20. បីនបុរសមានសូរាជាសាកល្បងអាហារពីប្រព័ន្ធ។

19. But sometimes if we don't go to see a movie or play, we go somewhere to dance.
20. These are some of my activities on weekends.
NEW VOCABULARY

Recreation Terms

Following are some terms, both new and old, having to do with the general subject of amusements and recreation.

Nouns

holiday (general word)
festival day, religious holiday
school break, day off
vacation
restaurant (formal word)
moving pictures
play, drama
Bassac drama, classical dance drama
subject, story (classifier for films and plays)
music
subtitle
activity
history
countryside
seashore, coast
boat, sampan (small)
ship (large)
ocean-going vessel
part, division
on the part of... on the other hand
Verbs and Adjectives

to play, to do something for fun

to play tennis

to go for a walk, to go out for fun

to go out (literally)

for amusement

to amuse oneself

to act as a group

to be connected with, to relate to

to dance

to go boating (usually rowing or sailing)

to go boating (usually with motor)

to swim

to fish

to shoot (firearms)

to hunt

sad

happy, comic

ill, sick

modern

ancient

gentle, not aggressive

pretty, nice to hear (said of sounds only)

spicy, hot-tasting
UNIT 51

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. ដែល នឹងសមេទេសបាន ថ្នាក់អ្នក?  
   Sok

2. មិនច្រើនទេ  
   Pon

3. ឬ អំពូលប្រកាំស្រើ  
   Pon  របស់អ្នក?  

4. ឬអ្នកធ្វើសិក្ខារឈ្មោះ?  
   Sok

5. អាចមកដល់ប្រពន្ធធំ?  
   Sok

6. អ្នកបានសុំឈ្នះឈ្នះ  
   Pon  ទៅប្រពន្ធធំ?  

7. ប្រពន្ធធំ?  
   Sok

8. ខ្លួនឯង ស្រីស្រីខ្មែរ?  
   Pon

9. អ្នកធ្វើប្រពន្ធធំ នៅថ្ងៃនេះ?  
   Pon

10. អ្នកធ្វើប្រពន្ធធំ ថ្ងៃនេះ?  
    Sok

11. អ្នកធ្វើប្រពន្ធធំ នៅថ្ងៃនេះ?  
    Pon

12. រូប ដែលអ្នកធ្វើប្រពន្ធធំ  
    Sok

   Pon! How are you feeling today?
   I heard you were sick.
   Oh, it's nothing! I just had a stomach-ache, that's all.
   I feel fine now.
   Did you go to the doctor?
   Yes, I did. The doctor gave me some pills to take, and told me to rest.
   What kind of pills?
   Big yellow ones.
   I take three a day, one at each meal time.
   Oh, they must be like the ones I was taking last month.
   You were sick for quite a long time then, if I recall.
   Yes, I was sick in bed for two weeks.
13. No matter what pills I swallowed it didn’t help, so the doctor gave me some shots.

14. What (disease) did you have?

15. Some kind of a cold.

16. The doctor isn’t sure either.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. តើអ្នកមានជីវិតម្រានយ៉ាងដឹងទើបយ៉ាងណាមួយ?  
   Have you recovered today yet?

2. តើអ្នកទទួលស្តុកប៊ីប៊ីទេ?  
   Have you gone out today yet?

3. តើអ្នកទៅបណ្តែកយ៉ាងណាមួយទេ?  
   Have you gone anywhere today yet?

4. តើអ្នកទៅលក់ម៉ាសុីតទេ?  
   Have you gone shopping today yet?

5. តើស្ត្រីអ្នកស្លាប់ម៉ាសុីតម៉ាសុីតរួចយ៉ាងណាមួយ?  
   Has your wife gone shopping today yet?

6. តើអ្វីវ៉ាង់ក្រុមម៉ាសុីតម៉ាសុីត?  
   Has Uncle Sok gone shopping today yet?

7. តើអ្វីនាម្រាប់ម៉ាសុីតម៉ាសុីតរួចយ៉ាងណាមួយ?  
   Has Aunt Van gone shopping today yet?

8. តើប្រាកដពីម៉ាសុីតម៉ាសុីតម៉ាសុីតរួចយ៉ាងណាមួយ?  
   Has Grandfather Phan gone shopping today yet?

9. តើប្រាកដពីម៉ាសុីតម៉ាសុីតម៉ាសុីតរួចយ៉ាងណាមួយ?  
   Did Grandfather Phan go shopping yesterday?

10. តើប្រាកដពីម៉ាសុីតម៉ាសុីតម៉ាសុីតរួចយ៉ាងណាមួយ?  
    Did Grandfather Phan go shopping the day before yesterday?

Drill B. Response

MODEL: តើអ្នកមានជីវិតម្រានយ៉ាងដឹងទើបយ៉ាងណាមួយ?  
Teacher: Have you recovered today yet?

Student: ខ្ញុំមិនបានមានជីវិតម្រានយ៉ាងដឹងទើបយ៉ាងណាមួយទេ. 
          I have not yet recovered today.
2. ឆ្លាយពីរចំនួនប៊ុលីប៉ុ្មសម្រាប់? ខ្ញុំមិនដឹងជាការបែកប្រែប៉ុណ្ណោះ។
3. ឆ្លាយពីរចំនួនប៊ុលីប៉ុ្មសម្រាប់? ខ្ញុំមិនដឹងជាការបែកប្រែប៉ុណ្ណោះ។
4. ឆ្លាយពីរចំនួនប៊ុលីប៉ុ្មសម្រាប់? ខ្ញុំមិនដឹងជាការបែកប្រែប៉ុណ្ណោះ។
5. ឆ្លាយពីរចំនួនប៊ុលីប៉ុ្មសម្រាប់? ខ្ញុំមិនដឹងជាការបែកប្រែប៉ុណ្ណោះ។
6. ឆ្លាយពីរចំនួនប៊ុលីប៉ុ្មសម្រាប់? ខ្ញុំមិនដឹងជាការបែកប្រែប៉ុណ្ណោះ។
7. ឆ្លាយពីរចំនួនប៊ុលីប៉ុ្មសម្រាប់? ខ្ញុំមិនដឹងជាការបែកប្រែប៉ុណ្ណោះ។
8. ឆ្លាយពីរចំនួនប៊ុលីប៉ុ្មសម្រាប់? ខ្ញុំមិនដឹងជាការបែកប្រែប៉ុណ្ណោះ។
9. ឆ្លាយពីរចំនួនប៊ុលីប៉ុ្មសម្រាប់? ខ្ញុំមិនដឹងជាការបែកប្រែប៉ុណ្ណោះ។

Drill C. Substitution

I hear that he has three sons.
I know that he has three sons.
I guess that he has three sons.
I understand that he has three sons.
I think that he has three sons.
I think that he won't come.
I think that he won't be very sick.
I think that he won't say anything.
I think that he won't know anything.
I think that he won't understand anything.

Drill D. Transformation

MODEL: តើមានប្រយុទ្ធដោយប្រែប៉ុណ្ណោះ? ខ្ញុំមិនដឹងជាការបែកប្រែប៉ុណ្ណោះ។

Teacher: He has three children. (hear)
Drill E. Substitution

1. តូលេខ១០ ១នាក់  (១០)  
2. តូលេខ១០ ២នាក់  (២០)  
3. តូលេខ១០ ៣នាក់  (៣០)  
4. តូលេខ១០ ៤នាក់  (៤០)  
5. តូលេខ១០ ៥នាក់  (៥០)  
6. តូលេខ១០ ៦នាក់  (៦០)  
7. តូលេខ១០ ៧នាក់  (៧០)  
8. តូលេខ១០ ៨នាក់  (៨០)  
9. តូលេខ១០ ៩នាក់  (៩០)  
10. តូលេខ១០ ១០នាក់  (១០០)  

Drill F. Response

MODEL: ចង់ កែសម្រាប់ អ្នក ។  (ស្រោះជាប់)  

Teacher:  What medicine are you taking?  
(big yellow)  

Student:  I'm taking big yellow pills.  

1. ចង់ កែសម្រាប់ អ្នក ា  (ស្រោះជាប់)  
2. ចង់ កែសម្រាប់ អ្នក ា  (ស្រោះជាប់)
Drill G. Double Substitution

1. មែនពេញ្ងឃើញការប្រការីមិនស្គាល់ទេ 
2. អ្នកគឺជាផ្លូវការការប្រការីមិនស្គាល់ទេ 
3. អ្នកមានសុខភាពភ្លាមៗមិនស្គាល់ទេ 
4. អ្នកមានសុខភាពភ្លាមៗមិនស្គាល់ទេ 
5. អ្នកមានសុខភាពភ្លាមៗមិនស្គាល់ទេ 
6. អ្នកមានសុខភាពភ្លាមៗមិនស្គាល់ទេ 
7. អ្នកមានសុខភាពភ្លាមៗមិនស្គាល់ទេ 
8. អ្នកមានសុខភាពភ្លាមៗមិនស្គាល់ទេ 
9. អ្នកមានសុខភាពភ្លាមៗមិនស្គាល់ទេ 

Drill H. Response

MODEL: ជាក់លាក់ណាមួយ? (គោក់) 
        ឬស្តុកឬមិនស្គាល់ទេ 
        អ្នកមានសុខភាពភ្លាមៗមិនស្គាល់ទេ 

1. អ្នកមានសុខភាពភ្លាមៗ? (គោក់) 
2. អ្នកមានសុខភាពភ្លាមៗ? (គោក់) 
3. អ្នកមានសុខភាពភ្លាមៗ? (គោក់) 
4. អ្នកមានសុខភាពភ្លាមៗ? (គោក់) 
5. អ្នកមានសុខភាពភ្លាមៗ? (គោក់) 
6. អ្នកមានសុខភាពភ្លាមៗ? (គោក់) 

Teacher: Do you know? (doctor) 
Student: I don't know. The doctor doesn't know for sure either.
Drill I. Response

MODEL: ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់រាជ  (ម្តាយ)  
         អ្នកស្គាល់បានការប្រុសប្រយ័ត្នាជាដើម?  

Teacher:  I hear he's got a headache.  
(stomach-ache)

Student:  I hear he's got a stomach-ache.

1. ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ  
2. ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ  
3. ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ  
4. ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ  
5. ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ  
6. ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ  
7. ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ  
8. ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ

Drill J. Response

MODEL: ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ  
         អ្នកស្គាល់បានការប្រុសប្រយ័ត្នាជាកន្លែង?  

Teacher:  Did he come to work today?  
(headache)

Student:  No, he didn't come. I hear he's got a headache.

1. ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ?  
2. ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ?  
3. ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ?  
4. ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ?  
5. ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ?  
6. ក្រុមហ៊ុនបានស្គាល់ពីនាក់ក្នុងក្រុងញូវតែ?
7. ពណ៌ស្រែមានឈ្មោះលក់? (ៗយរីយោ) ។ ការស្រែមាន ឈ្មោះលក់ ។

8. កំពុងបង្ការជាសម្រប់? (ៗយរីយោ) ។ ការបង្ការជាសម្រប់ ។
1.  Do you have a fever?

2.  Yes, (I had) a high fever for two or three days. But (then) later on I constantly coughed and sneezed.

3.  I always get a cold in the rainy season.

4.  Do you have a cold too?

5.  (Yes, I) often (do) also, but it's nothing.

6.  If it were TB, then I'd be unhappy.

7.  Yes, we have to be careful because it's more serious than malaria these days.

8.  Yes, there are a lot of mosquitoes but no malaria any more now.

9.  I think I'll be going.

10.  Be careful, and don't forget I work in a pharmacy.

11.  If you need any medicine, please ask me.

12.  Yes, thank you, but my younger
14. ដើម្បីអាំងស្ថានភាពយោងនេះ អ្នកអាចបានល្វេងអ្នករបស់អ្នកមួយបានខ្លួន

sister works in the new hospital.

She can give me some shots very easily.
Drill A. Substitution

1.  ដើររបស់ខ្ញុំមានស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។
2.  កុម្មុយ្យរបស់ខ្ញុំមានស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។
3.  ការប្រឈមរបស់ខ្ញុំមានស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។
4.  ការប្រឈមរបស់ខ្ញុំមានស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។
5.  ការប្រឈមរបស់ខ្ញុំមានស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។
6.  ការប្រឈមរបស់ខ្ញុំមានស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។
7.  ការប្រឈមរបស់ខ្ញុំមានស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។
8.  ការប្រឈមរបស់ខ្ញុំមានស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។

1.  គាត់មានការប្រឈមស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។
2.  គាត់មានការប្រឈមស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។
3.  គាត់មានការប្រឈមស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។
4.  គាត់មានការប្រឈមស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។
5.  គាត់មានការប្រឈមស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។
6.  គាត់មានការប្រឈមស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។
7.  គាត់មានការប្រឈមស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។
8.  គាត់មានការប្រឈមស្រាប់កាយច្រេឈក។

Drill B. Multiple Substitution

1.  នេះជាការប្រឈមដែលខ្ញុំអាចក៏មានការដឹងនៅក្នុងប្រជាជន។
2.  នេះជាការប្រឈមដែលខ្ញុំអាចក៏មានការដឹងនៅក្នុងប្រជាជន។
3.  នេះជាការប្រឈមដែលខ្ញុំអាចក៏មានការដឹងនៅក្នុងប្រជាជន។
4.  នេះជាការប្រឈមដែលខ្ញុំអាចក៏មានការដឹងនៅក្នុងប្រជាជន។
5.  នេះជាការប្រឈមដែលខ្ញុំអាចក៏មានការដឹងនៅក្នុងប្រជាជន។
6.  នេះជាការប្រឈមដែលខ្ញុំអាចក៏មានការដឹងនៅក្នុងប្រជាជន។
7.  នេះជាការប្រឈមដែលខ្ញុំអាចក៏មានការដឹងនៅក្នុងប្រជាជន។
8.  នេះជាការប្រឈមដែលខ្ញុំអាចក៏មានការដឹងនៅក្នុងប្រជាជន។

He's had a high fever for two or three days.
He's had a stomachache for two or three days.
He's had a cold for two or three days.
He's had a sore throat for two or three days.
He's had a cough for two or three days.
He's had sore eyes for two or three days.
He's had a headache for two or three days.
He's had a broken heart for two or three days.

When it rains I always get a cold.

When I have a disease I always get tired.
When I get a car I always want to go out.
When I get a radio I always want to turn it on.
When I get a book I always want to read.
When I cannot study I always want to go out.

When he drives I always get scared.

When I go to the pagoda I always meet him.
When he doesn't have money he always borrows from me.
When he doesn't see me he always cries.
When he misses me he always looks for me.
When he doesn't get any news he always gets sad.
When the students can't study they always blame the teacher.

When the students don't catch on they always say it's difficult.

When the students are lazy they
always say the teacher is not good.
When he doesn’t go to the doctor he always says he’s sick.

Drill C. Substitution

1. សិស្ស ជួតឈុត ពេញ កាល

2. សិស្ស ជួតឈុត ពេញ កាល

3. សិស្ស ជួតឈុត ពេញ កាល

4. សិស្ស ជួតឈុត ពេញ កាល

5. សិស្ស ជួតឈុត ពេញ កាល

6. សិស្ស ជួតឈុត ពេញ កាល

7. សិស្ស ជួតឈុត ពេញ កាល

8. សិស្ស ជួតឈុត ពេញ កាល

We have to be careful when a mosquito bites.

We have to be careful when we drive the car.

We have to be careful when we cross the street.

We have to be careful when we have a fever.

We have to be careful when we ride a bicycle.

We have to be careful when we ride in a boat.

We have to be careful when we cough a lot.

We have to be careful when we are not well.

Drill D. Response

MODEL: តែង់ អំពូលឌួល៉ាស៊ីរ? (មិនឃើញទេទេ)

Teacher: What kind of medicine do you need?
(a bottle of aspirin)

Student: I need a bottle of aspirin.

Teacher: តែង់ អំពូលឌួល៉ាស៊ីរ? (មិនឃើញទេទេ)

Teacher: តែង់ អំពូលឌួល៉ាស៊ីរ? (មិនឃើញទេទេ)

Teacher: តែង់ អំពូលឌួល៉ាស៊ីរ? (មិនឃើញទេទេ)

Teacher: តែង់ អំពូលឌួល៉ាស៊ីរ? (មិនឃើញទេទេ)

Teacher: តែង់ អំពូលឌួល៉ាស៊ីរ? (មិនឃើញទេទេ)
Drill E. Response

MODEL:  What do you need to buy? (two bottles of aspirin)

Teacher:  I need to buy two bottles of aspirin.

Drill F. Expansion

They can go.

They can go to the new hospital.

They can go to the new government hospital.

They can go to the new government hospital in Takhmau.

They can go to the new government hospital in Takhmau easily.

1.  

2.  

3.  

4.  

5.  

Drill G. Reduction

1.  They can go to the new government hospital in Takhmau easily.
2.  They can go to the new government hospital in Takhmau.
3.  They can go to the new hospital.
4.  They can go.

Drill H. Multiple Substitution

1.  If I’m only sick a little bit, I don’t worry.
2.  If he’s got a slight cold he doesn’t worry.
3.  If his son has a slight cold the teacher doesn’t worry.
4.  If it’s broken a little bit I don’t worry.
5.  If he has a slight fever he doesn’t worry.
6.  If he steals a little bit I don’t worry.
7.  If they’re slightly mistaken I don’t worry.
8.  If it’s broken a little bit I don’t worry.
UNIT 53

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. សួរអ្នកឈ្នះជើងសុា កុមារ?  
   **Sok**  
   Do you know a doctor in this town?

2. ខ្ញុំឈ្នះជើងសុា កុមារវេយ  
   **Pon**  
   I know a lot of them, but they don't all treat the same diseases.

3. ខ្ញុំចង់ទៅជើងសុត្តិះជើងសុផឹ្កែ  
   **Sok**  
   I want to go to a doctor who specializes in treating noses.

4. អៀតឱ្យអ្នកស្គើសុីស្រឬស្រី?  
   **Pon**  
   Do you have a tumor?

5. និងអ្នកស្គើសកម្មសុម្ពីឺស្ថិតិភាព  
   **Sok**  
   Maybe, because my nose is always sore.

6. ពេលដែលអ្នកស្ងាត់ប្រែប្រាក់សុា កុមារ  
   **Pon**  
   In that case you won't have to look far. Go see my doctor.

7. អ្នកមានអំពីសុប្បាយ?  
   **Sok**  
   Did you have this trouble too?

8. មិនមានអំពីសុប្បាយរីកចម្រុះខ្លះ  
   **Pon**  
   My doctor is treating me these days (for that, also).

9. ប្រាក់សុា កុមារ  
   **Sok**  
   How many months has this doctor been treating your illness?
10. ដែលបានប្រឈមស្រាលទៅ?  
    Pon  Oh, maybe two or three months, that's all.

11. ប្រឈមកូនបែបណា?  
    Sok  What kind of medicine does he give?

12. ការដែលបានប្រឈមស្រាល  
    Pon  He gives me a shot and some medicine every two weeks.

13. មានអ្វីអាចមិនចាំបាច់?  
    Sok  How many pills do you take a day?

14. ដែលបានប្រឈមស្រាល  
    Pon  Six pills a day. Two pills after each meal.

15. នៅក្នុងបញ្ហានេះ  
    Sok  Are you getting better now?

16. ការដែលបានប្រឈមស្រាល  
    Pon  I'm much better now. But during the first two or three weeks I was very tired.

17. តើអ្វី?  
    Sok  How come?

18. មានអ្វីដែលកុតទៅទៀត?  
    Pon  I don't know, but at first the doctor gave me shots and he had me take a lot of pills.

19.  

20. តើអ្វីដែលកុតទៅទៀត  
    Sok  And he had me stay and rest at home.
    Pon  He forbade me to do any heavy work.
Drill A. Substitution

1. Do you know any nose doctor near here?
   ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនបំពាក់នៅទីនេះទេ? ។

2. Do you know any monk near here?
   ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនអាម្ពរស្ដេចនៅទីនេះទេ? ។

3. Do you know any province chief near here?
   ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនអ្នកប្រធានាធិបតីនៅទីនេះទេ? ។

4. Do you know any lawyer near here?
   ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនអ្នកទទួលសម្រាប់ទេ? ។

5. Do you know any Cambodian restaurant near here?
   ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនអនុសិញ្ញងទេ? ។

6. Do you know any noodle shop near here?
   ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនឪស្ាធុសុវត្ថិភាពទេ? ។

7. Do you know any shoe shop near here?
   ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនទូលស្ាធុសុវត្ថិភាពទេ? ។

8. Do you know any tailor shop near here?
   ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនអាក់ចុះស្ាធុសុវត្ថិភាពទេ? ។

9. Do you know any car repair shop near here?
   ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនអាក់ចុះស្ាធុសុវត្ថិភាពទេ? ។

10. Do you know any gas station near here?
    ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនលោកប្រាញ់អេក្រង់ទេ? ។

11. Do you know any picnic spot near here?
    ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនឈឺមហ៍ក្នុងទេ? ។

12. Do you know any movie house near here?
    ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនភាពយន្តភាពយន្តទេ? ។

13. Do you know any theatre near here?
    ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនទេ? ។

14. Do you know any pharmacy near here?
    ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនអាលំហូរទេ? ។

15. Do you know any blacksmith near here?
    ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនអាក់ធាតុទេ? ។

16. Do you know any public gardens near here?
    ដើម្បីកោះគំនិតណាម្នាក់បានកំពតត្រូវបានទទួលនឹងខ្សែដែនក្រុងសមុទ្រទេ? ។
Drill B. Substitution

1. Do you have a nose tumor now?
   Do you have a nose tumor now?
   Do you have measles now?
   Do you have itching now?
   Are you taking medicine (pill) now?
   Are you taking medicine (liquid) now?
   Are you going to the doctor now?
   Are you going to bed now?
   Are you better now?

Drill C. Response

MODEL: តើ: មានសាលាបំពង្រីកនៅក្នុងមុខមិន? (មុខទឹក)
        យើង: មានសាលាបំពង្រីកនៅក្នុងមុខមិន

Teacher: Do you have a nose tumor? (stuffy nose)

Student: No, I don't have a nose tumor, I only have a stuffy nose.
Drill D. **Multiples Substitution**

1. មួយមុំ ត្រូវ ស្លាប់ ឆ្លែង ។ 

2. មនុស្សសុខាភិបាលបាន ឆ្លែង ។ 

3. សម្រាប់ចំណាស់សុខាភិបាល ឆ្លែង ។ 

4. ប្រឹក្សារូបសុខាភិបាល ឆ្លែង ។ 

5. សីស្រើស ស្លាប់ឆ្លែង ។ 

6. ស្លាប់ ឆ្លែង ។ 

7. ឆ្លែង ។ 

8. ឆ្លែង ។ 

First of all, the doctor gave him a shot, and then had him lie down. 

Next the doctor gave him a shot, and then had him sit down. 

Afterwards the doctor gave him a shot, and then had him go home. 

Yesterday the doctor gave him a shot, and then had him take aspirin. 

Previously the doctor gave him a shot, and then had him take medicine (liquid). 

Tomorrow the doctor will give him a shot and then have him take medicine (liquid). 

Today the doctor will give him a shot and then have him take medicine (pill). 

Before this the doctor gave him a shot and then had him come back in a week. 

Drill E. **Response**

**MODEL:** អ្នកសិក្សាជាសីតុងគ្រឿង? (េង) ខ្មែរ: ក្រុមសិក្សាជាសីតុងគ្រឿង? ខ្មែរ: 

1. អ្នកសិក្សាជាសីតុងគ្រឿង? (េង) 

2. អ្នកសិក្សាជាសីតុងគ្រឿង? (អង់គ្លេស) 

3. អ្នកសិក្សាជាសីតុងគ្រឿង? (អង់គ្លេស) 

4. អ្នកសិក្សាជាសីតុងគ្រឿង? (អង់គ្លេស) 

5. អ្នកសិក្សាជាសីតុងគ្រឿង? (អង់គ្លេស) 

Teacher: Do you know any nose doctors? (one) 

Student: Yes, I know one near here.
6.  ស្រុកមកឃ្លាំងស្រុកមកឃ្លាំង មកឃ្លាំង 
    6.  ពីរីកមកឃ្លាំងពីរីកមកឃ្លាំង ពីរីកមកឃ្លាំង 

7.  ខែស្រើស្រើស្រើស្រើស្រើស្រើ 
    7.  ពីរីកខែពីរីកខែពីរីកខែពីរីកខែពីរីកខែ 

8.  ពាក់មូលពាក់មូលពាក់មូលពាក់មូលពាក់មូលពាក់មូល 
    8.  ពីរីកមូលពីរីកមូលពីរីកមូលពីរីកមូលពីរីកមូលពីរីកមូល 

9.  ពន្លឺមានស្រីរាត់ស្រីរាត់ 
    9.  ពីរីកពន្លឺពីរីកពន្លឺពីរីកពន្លឺពីរីកពន្លឺពីរីកពន្លឺ 

Drill F. Transformation

MODEL: 'ព្រឹត្តិការណ៍: គាត់មកបង្កើតការងារមកបង្កើតការងារមកបង្កើតការងារ 
                      មកបង្កើតការងារមកបង្កើតការងារមកបង្កើតការងារ 
                      មកបង្កើតការងារមកបង្កើតការងារមកបង្កើតការងារ 
                      មកបង្កើតការងារមកបង្កើតការងារ មកបង្កើតការងារ 
                      មកបង្កើតការងារមកបង្កើតការងារ 

1.  គាត់មកបង្កើតការងារមកបង្កើតការងារមកបង្កើតការងារ 
2.  គាត់មកបង្កើតការងារមកបង្កើតការងារ 
3.  គាត់មកបង្កើតការងារមកបង្កើតការងារ 
4.  គាត់ងារមកបង្កើតការងារ 
5.  គាត់ងារមកបង្កើតការងារ 
6.  គាត់ងារមកបង្កើតការងារ 
7.  គាត់ងារមកបង្កើតការងារ 
8.  គាត់ងារមកបង្កើតការងារ 

Teacher: Every day he works hard. 
Student: Every day he doesn't dare work hard.

Drill G. Expansion

1.  ខ្ញុោមូល 
2.  រីកមូលមូលមូល
I know one monk.
I know one monk at the Pali School.

I know one monk studying at the Pali School.

I know one monk studying English at the Pali School.

Drill H. Reduction

1. លែងម្តាយតាមរដ្ឋធនាគារ បង្កើតរដ្ឋធនាគារថែម
   I know one monk studying English at the Pali School.

2. អ្នកកុក្រិតប្រការបង្កើតរដ្ឋធនាគារថែម
   I know one monk studying at the Pali School.

3. មិនអាចត្រូវបានបង្កើតរដ្ឋធនាគារថែម
   I know one monk.

4. មិនអាចត្រូវបានបង្កើតរដ្ឋធនាគារថែម
   I know one.

5. មិនអាចត្រូវបានបង្កើតរដ្ឋធនាគារថែម
   I know.

Drill I. Response

MODEL: មានប្រធានាធិបតីចំនួនមិនដឹងទេ នៅក្នុងក្រុងទីនេះ? (៣) គឺជាជាអំពីអ្នកមួយដែលស្គាល់ថែម

Student: I don't know for sure, but I think about 6 or 7.

Teacher: Do you know how many doctors there are in this town? (6 or 7)

MODEL: មានប្រធានាធិបតីចំនួន៦ នៅក្នុងក្រុងទីនេះ

Teacher: I know how many doctors there are in this town.

Student: Six.

MODEL: មានប្រធានាធិបតីចំនួនបែងជាមួយនៅក្នុងក្រុងទីនេះ

Teacher: I know how many doctors there are in this town.

Student: Seven.

MODEL: មានប្រធានាធិបតីចំនួនឈ្មោះឈ្មោះនៅក្នុងក្រុងទីនេះ

Teacher: I know how many doctors there are in this town.

Student: Eight.

MODEL: មានប្រធានាធិបតីចំនួន៨ នៅក្នុងក្រុងទីនេះ

Teacher: I know how many doctors there are in this town.

Student: Eight.
5. ប្រយោគ Gary តើប្រឈមតាមអ្នកចុះអំពី Gary ៗាំង? (ភោត់)

6. រំញាលោះ Gary តើ? (ឈឺត់)

7. ប្រយោគ Gary កោះសារចាំបាច់? (្ការាយ)

8. ប្រយោគ Gary ឈឺត់ ម្នាក់? (្ការាយ)

Drill J.  Response


Teacher:  Do you know how many doctors there are in this town?

Student:  I don't know how many there are.

UNIT 54

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. Did the doctor ask you to go to the hospital?

   Did the doctor ask you to go to the hospital?

2. Yes. He said that in the hospital they have good equipment.

   Yes. He said that in the hospital they have good equipment.

3. And they also have skilled nurses to take care of you.

   And they also have skilled nurses to take care of you.

4. But I didn't think I was seriously ill, therefore I didn't go to the hospital.

   But I didn't think I was seriously ill, therefore I didn't go to the hospital.

5. How did you know that you had a tumor?

   How did you know that you had a tumor?

6. My nose was stuffed up three or four months before.

   My nose was stuffed up three or four months before.

7. And you were always tired, right?

   And you were always tired, right?

8. Yes, and I didn't go to the hospital because I thought the illness was not serious.

   Yes, and I didn't go to the hospital because I thought the illness was not serious.

9. You should go see my doctor immediately. Don't put it off too long.

   You should go see my doctor immediately. Don't put it off too long.
10. I know, but now I've just had a tooth pulled.

11. Is your dentist good?

12. Oh, that dentist is very good.

13. I have a tooth that hurts. I want the dentist to pull it.

14. That doctor is very good at filling teeth.

15. In that case, you go see my doctor, and I'll go see your dentist.
DRILLS

Drill A. Response

MODEL: បើ បានបារាជីការអំពីអាហារ ទៅទីក្រុងស៊ីហ្វឺរ៉ូនាទី ត្រូវបានដឹកនាំទៅដើម្បី ប្រតិបត្តិការអំពីអាហារ បានដឹកនាំទៅដើម្បី ប្រតិបត្តិការអំពីអាហារ បានដឹកនាំទៅដើម្បី ប្រតិបត្តិការអំពីអាហារ បានដឹកនាំទៅដើម្បី ប្រតិបត្តិការអំពីអាហារ

1. បានដឹកនាំទៅដើម្បីបង្កើតការអំពីអាហារឬទេ?
2. បានដឹកនាំទៅដើម្បីបង្កើតការអំពីអាហារឬទេ?
3. បានដឹកនាំទៅដើម្បីបង្កើតការអំពីអាហារឬទេ?
4. បានដឹកនាំទៅដើម្បីបង្កើតការអំពីអាហារឬទេ?
5. បានដឹកនាំទៅដើម្បីបង្កើតការអំពីអាហារឬទេ?

Drill B. Response

MODEL: យើងមានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ

1. យើងមានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ
2. យើងមានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ
3. យើងមានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ
4. យើងមានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ
5. យើងមានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ
6. យើងមានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ

Teacher: មិនធានាទៅទៅដើម្បីបង្កើតការអំពីអាហារទៀត មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ មានការសំរាប់អំពីអាហារ

Student: បានដឹកនាំទៅដើម្បីបង្កើតការអំពីអាហារឬទេ?

Teacher: The doctor said to go to the hospital.

Student: Where did the doctor say to go?

Teacher: The doctor said to go to the hospital.
Drill C. Substitution

1.  The doctor said that I don't have to miss school.
   តាមរយៈ​គ្រាប់ ថាជាមិនត្រូវបានបង្កើត
2.  My teacher said that I don't have to miss school.
   មិនបានបង្កើតទេ ថាជាមិនត្រូវបានបង្កើត
3.  My older brother said that I don't have to miss school.
   មិនបានបង្កើតទេ ថាជាមិនត្រូវបានបង្កើត
4.  He said that I don't have to miss school.
   គាត់បានបង្កើតថាជាមិនត្រូវបានបង្កើត
5.  All the students said that I don't have to miss school.
   មានគោលដៅពីរគមន៍ថាជាមិនត្រូវបានបង្កើត
6.  They understand that I don't have to miss school.
   គោលដៅមានថាជាមិនត្រូវបានបង្កើត
7.  They think that I don't have to miss school.
   គោលដៅអាចថាជាមិនត្រូវបានបង្កើត
8.  They explained to me that I don't have to miss school.
   គោលដៅអាចថាជាមិនត្រូវបានបង្កើត
9.  He says to me that I don't have to miss school.
   គាត់បានបង្កើតថាជាមិនត្រូវបានបង្កើត
10. I have a cold but they say that I don't have to miss school.
    ខ្ញុំមានអាហារបៃតងប៉ុណ្ណោះក្នុងប្រទេសបានបង្កើតថាជាមិនត្រូវបានបង្កើត
11. I can't walk, but they say that I don't have to miss school.
    ខ្ញុំមិនអាចឆ្លងកាត់ប៉ុណ្ណោះក្នុងប្រទេសបានបង្កើតថាជាមិនត្រូវបានបង្កើត
Drill D. Multiple Substitution

1.  You should go see the doctor immediately; don't wait too long.
   ក្រុមប្រឹការស្តាយពីរដែលក្រុមប្រឹការស្តាយជាមួយនឹងក្រុមប្រឹការស្តាយដែលក្រុមប្រឹការស្តាយជាមួយនឹងក្រុមប្រឹការស្តាយដែលក្រុមប្រឹការស្តាយជាមួយនឹងក្រុមប្រឹការស្តាយដែលក្រុមប្រឹការស្តាយជាមួយនឹងក្រុមប្រឹការស្តាយជាមួយនឹងក្រុមប្រឹការស្តាយជាមួយនឹងក្រុមប្រឹការស្តាយជាមួយ
   2.  You should go see the dentist immediately; don't delay too long.
   3.  You should go see the teacher immediately; don't stay too long.
   4.  You should go see my older brother immediately; don't wait too long.
   5.  You should go see the salesman immediately; don't stay too long.
   6.  You should go see my uncle immediately; don't wait too long.

Drill E. Multiple Substitution

1. I know it already, but now I have a toothache.
   2. I heard it already, but now I can not do it.
   3. I understood it already, but now I have forgotten.
   4. I saw it already, but now I can't bring it.
   5. I know (him) already, but now I don't know where he went.
   6. I know how already, but now I don't have the time to do it.
   7. I went once already, but now I forget the place.
   8. I bought some once already, but now I want to buy some more.
   9. I met him already, but now I want to ask him (something).
   10. I have it already, but now I want to have some more.
Drill F. Response

MODEL: កំប្លិ៍ ចំណាក់ឆ្នោតដោយក្រីត (ដែនកូន)
          ឬមើ រកិច្ចការណ៍ ក្រីត តែស្រី?

1. ចំណាក់ឆ្នោតដោយក្រីត (ដែនកូន)
2. ប្រុងប្រយ័ត្នដោយក្រីត (ម៉ាតូ)
3. រកិច្ចការណ៍ ក្រីត (តូចណាស់)
4. ប្រុងប្រយ័ត្នដោយក្រីត (ស្រីស្រៀត)
5. ប្រុងប្រយ័ត្នដោយក្រីត (តូចណាស់)
6. ប្រុងប្រយ័ត្នដោយក្រីត (អស្បុត)

Teacher: My teeth keep aching. (doctor)

Student: Do you know a good doctor?

Drill G. Response

MODEL: កំប្លិ៍ ដើម្បីមើ រកិច្ចការណ៍ ក្រីត តែស្រី?
          ឬមើ រកិច្ចការណ៍ ក្រីត តែស្រី?

Teacher: Do you know any good doctors?

Student: I know one; you can go see him.
Drill H. Expansion

1. ខ្លាវសូមមេតាតើ?
   I see you.

2. ខ្លាវសុខកាសដែរកើត?
   I see the teacher.

3. ខ្លាវសុខកាសដែរនារី?
   I see the doctor.

4. ខ្លាវសុខកាសជំនាញ់ជាមួយអន្ដូង?
   I see the dentist.

5. ខ្លាវសុខកាសជំនាញ់ជាមួយអន្ដូងជាអារម្មណ៍បង្កើត
   I saw the dentist yesterday.

6. ខ្លាវសុខកាសជំនាញ់ជាមួយអន្ដូងជាអារម្មណ៍បង្កើតនៅមុខស្វែងរក
   I saw the dentist yesterday in front of the hall.

7. ខ្លាវសុខកាសជំនាញ់ជាមួយអន្ដូងជាអារម្មណ៍បង្កើតនៅក្នុងសេដ្ឋកិច្ចស្វែងរក
   I saw the dentist yesterday in front of the school.

8. ខ្លាវសុខកាសជំនាញ់ជាមួយអន្ដូងជាអារម្មណ៍បង្កើតនៅក្នុងសេដ្ឋកិច្ចស្វែងរកនៅក្នុងសេដ្ឋកិច្ចស្វែងរក
   I saw the dentist yesterday walking in front of the school.

9. ខ្លាវសុខកាសជំនាញ់ជាមួយអន្ដូងជាអារម្មណ៍បង្កើតនៅក្នុងសេដ្ឋកិច្ចស្វែងរកនៅក្នុងសេដ្ឋកិច្ចស្វែងរកនៅក្នុងសេដ្ឋកិច្ចស្វែងរក
   I saw the dentist yesterday walking in front of the school with the teacher.

10. ខ្លាវសុខកាសជំនាញ់ជាមួយអន្ដូងជាអារម្មណ៍បង្កើតនៅក្នុងសេដ្ឋកិច្ចស្វែងរកនៅក្នុងសេដ្ឋកិច្ចស្វែងរកនៅក្នុងសេដ្ឋកិច្ចស្វែងរក
    I saw the dentist yesterday walking in front of the school with a teacher.

Drill I. Reduction

1. ខ្លាវសុខកាសជំនាញ់ជាមួយអន្ដូងជាអារម្មណ៍បង្កើត
   I saw the dentist yesterday walking in front of the school with a teacher.

2. ខ្លាវសុខកាសជំនាញ់ជាមួយអន្ដូងជាអារម្មណ៍បង្កើត
   I saw the dentist yesterday walking in front of the school with the teacher.

3. ខ្លាវសុខកាសជំនាញ់ជាអារម្មណ៍បង្កើត
   I saw the dentist yesterday walking in front of the school.

4. ខ្លាវសុខកាសជំនាញ់ជាអារម្មណ៍បង្កើត
   I saw the dentist yesterday in front
of the school.

I saw the dentist yesterday in front of the hall.

I saw the dentist yesterday.

I saw the dentist.

I saw the doctor.

I saw the teacher.

I saw you.
UNIT 55

NARRATION

1. There were two friends, one named Pon, the other named Sok.
2. Pon and Sok were sick.
3. But now both of them are feeling a little better.
4. The day Pon went back to work, Sok asked him: How are you feeling?
5. Pon told him he just had a stomach-ache; he feels fine now.
6. Pon went to see his doctor and the doctor gave him some pills to take and told him to rest.
7. That medicine is large yellow pills which Pon must take three times a day, one pill at each meal.
8. Sok said that these pills look like the ones he was taking last month.
9. Mr. Pon remembers also that Mr. Sok was sick for quite a long time then.
10. He had a very bad cold - no matter what pills he took, it didn't help, and so he was sick in bed for two weeks.
11. Finally, the doctor gave him some shots and he recovered.
1. Mr. Pon has some pain in his nose and he asks Mr. Sok if he knows any good nose doctor.
2. Mr. Sok knows a lot of doctors, but they don't treat the same kinds of diseases.
3. He tells Mr. Pon that if he thinks he has a growth in his nose he can go to see a doctor that he knows.
4. That doctor is treating Mr. Sok's illness at present.
5. The doctor began treating Mr. Sok's illness about two or three months ago.
6. Every two weeks he gives him a shot and gives him some medicine to take along.
7. He has to take six pills every day - two pills after each meal.
8. (Later) Mr. Pon asks if Mr. Sok is better now.
9. Mr. Sok says that he feels much better now, but the first two or three weeks he felt very tired.
10. At that time the doctor gave him some shots, many pills to take, forbade him to do any heavy work, and ordered him to rest at home.
1. ប្រើប្រាស់សាលាលក់ក្នុងការសរសេរព័ត៌មានជាតិ។

2. ការពេញនិយមសាលារៀបរាងការរស់នៅតាមតំបន់ពីរៅទឹក។

3. តាមរយៈមនុស្សចិត្តការរស់នៅរវាងរបស់លោក។

4. គោលដៅ៖ ការប្រកួតប្រុងក្នុងការសរសេរព័ត៌មានជាតិ។

5. គោលដៅ៖ ការស្វែងយល់ក្នុងការសរសេរព័ត៌មានជាតិ។

6. ការប្រកួតប្រុងក្នុងការសរសេរព័ត៌មានជាតិ។

7. គោលដៅ៖ ការស្វែងយល់ក្នុងការប្រកួតប្រុង។

8. គោលដៅ៖ ការស្វែងយល់ក្នុងការប្រកួតប្រុង។

9. គោលដៅ៖ ការស្វែងយល់ក្នុងការប្រកួតប្រុង។

10. គោលដៅ៖ ការស្វែងយល់ក្នុងការប្រកួតប្រុង។

1. Mr. Sok's doctor wants him to stay in the hospital.

2. At the hospital there is good equipment and trained medical technicians to look after (him).

3. But Mr. Sok didn't think he was very ill and he asked his doctor to (let him) rest at home.

4. Mr. Pon asked Mr. Sok how he knew that he had a growth in his nose.

5. Mr. Sok said that he constantly had difficulty in breathing, but he didn't go to the doctor.

6. He told Mr. Pon: 'You should go to see my doctor right away; don't put it off too long.'

7. Mr. Sok wants to go to see the doctor right away but he says that he has just had a tooth pulled.

8. Hearing this Mr. Pon asks Mr. Sok: 'Can I go to see this dentist too? I have a toothache also.'

9. Mr. Sok says: 'This dentist is very good. He's very good at filling teeth too.'

10. You go to see my doctor, and I'll go see yours.'
UNIT 56

BASIC DIALOGUE

1.  Is it hard to find a servant in this town?

2.  It's not hard if you have a Cambodian friend.

3.  Ask him to help you find one.

4.  Can you help me find one?

5.  Do you want a servant to cook or to clean the house?

6.  I want a man servant who knows how to take care of the house and to cook a little bit.

7.  In that case, it's no problem; wait and I'll bring one to meet you.

8.  What's your name? Where is your native village?

9.  My name is Kim; my birthplace is in Takeo Province.
10. បាននៅតំនាញដូចគ្នាទេ?

Sok  How old are you?

11. ធុងពីរថ្ងៃមកជាមួយគ្នាទេ

Kim  In two months I'll be eighteen.
DRILLS

Drill A. Response

MODEL: បំបូលឬអូនមិនបានធ្វើការជាមួយមិនបានធ្វើការជាមួយមិនបានធ្វើការជាមួយមិនបានធ្វើការជាមួយ

Teacher: Is it hard to get a taxi here?

Student: No, it's not hard; there are a lot of taxis, but they're a little expensive.

Drill B. Response

MODEL: សូមអញ្ចាញមិនបានធ្វើការជាមួយមិនបានធ្វើការជាមួយមិនបានធ្វើការជាមួយមិនបានធ្វើការជាមួយ

Teacher: I want to get a young person to help prepare the food and to keep house.

Student: O K, (in that case) let me help you look. Next week I'll come see you again.
Drill C. Response

MODEL: ខ្ញុំមានសារឈ្មោះទី បាត់ទៅមិញ
ខ្លួនឯង: ខ្ញុំបានមាន ទីតាំងដែលខ្ញុំបានស្គាល់

1. ខ្ញុំមានប្រាក់ប្រែពីកម្ពស់វេហារប់ឆ្នាំមកទេ?
2. ខ្ញុំមានស្ថានភាពស្គាល់ឆ្នាំបើម្យេសព្រមៗទេ?
3. ខ្ញុំក៏មានស្ភារ័យស្តិេសឆ្នាំមកទេ?
4. ខ្ញុំមានស្អាតងាយស្គាល់ឆ្នាំមកទេ?
5. ខ្ញុំមានអារម្មណ៍ប្រឈមឆ្នាំមកទេ?
6. ខ្ញុំមានអារម្មណ៍ប្រុងឆ្នាំមកទេ?
Drill D. **Substitution**

1. ឃ្លាអិនសំឡាញ់ ឱ្យខ្ញុំ អាចទូទៅ និង សុំស្រួល ប្រភេទ នៃ ផ្លូវ។

2. ឃ្លាអិនសំឡាញ់ ឱ្យខ្ញុំ អាចទូទៅ និង សុំស្រួល ប្រភេទ នៃ ផ្លូវ។

3. ឃ្លាអិនសំឡាញ់ ឱ្យខ្ញុំ អាចទូទៅ និង សុំស្រួល ប្រភេទ នៃ ផ្លូវ។

4. ឃ្លាអិនសំឡាញ់ ឱ្យខ្ញុំ អាចទូទៅ និង សុំស្រួល ប្រភេទ នៃ ផ្លូវ។

5. ឃ្លាអិនសំឡាញ់ ឱ្យខ្ញុំ អាចទូទៅ និង សុំស្រួល ប្រភេទ នៃ ផ្លូវ។

6. ឃ្លាអិនសំឡាញ់ ឱ្យខ្ញុំ អាចទូទៅ និង សុំស្រួល ប្រភេទ នៃ ផ្លូវ។

Drill E. **Double Substitution**

1. អាចមិនអាចសុះស្រួល ផ្លូវ? ។

2. អាចមិនអាចសុះស្រួល ផ្លូវ? ។

3. អាចមិនអាចសុះស្រួល ផ្លូវ? ។

4. អាចមិនអាចសុះស្រួល ផ្លូវ? ។

5. អាចមិនអាចសុះស្រួល ផ្លូវ? ។

6. អាចមិនអាចសុះស្រួល ផ្លូវ? ។

7. អាចមិនអាចសុះស្រួល ផ្លូវ? ។

8. អាចមិនអាចសុះស្រួល ផ្លូវ? ។

-I know how to cook rice and take care of the house.

-I know how to cook and take care of the house.

-I know how to look after children and take care of the house.

-I know how to go marketing and take care of the house.

-I know how to drive and take care of the house.

-I know how to serve guests and take care of the house.

-Did you know anyone who could help?

-Did you know anyone who could do (it)?

-Did you see anyone who could go?

-Did you allow anyone to go see (it)?

-Did you tell anyone to wait for us?

-Did you call anyone to come meet us?

-Did you look for anyone who could explain (it to) us?

-Did you hear about anyone who could leave?
Did you take anyone to go meet (someone)?

Did you want anyone to go get (it)?

Drill F. Double Substitution

1. ពេល សុំឲ្យយើង និយាយថាម សុំតុំ
   ពួកគេ រួម

2. ពេល សុំឲ្យយើង និយាយថាម សុំតុំ
   សុំតុំ តារយម

3. ពេល សុំឲ្យយើង និយាយថាម សុំតុំ
   សុំតុំ តារយម

4. ពេល សុំឲ្យយើង និយាយថាម សុំតុំ
   សុំតុំ តារយម

5. ពេល សុំឲ្យយើង និយាយថាម សុំតុំ
   សុំតុំ តារយម

6. ពេល សុំឲ្យយើង និយាយថាម សុំតុំ
   សុំតុំ តារយម

7. ពេល សុំឲ្យយើង និយាយថាម សុំតុំ
   សុំតុំ តារយម

8. ពេល សុំឲ្យយើង និយាយថាម សុំតុំ
   សុំតុំ តារយម

9. ពេល សុំឲ្យយើង និយាយថាម សុំតុំ
   សុំតុំ តារយម

Drill G. Expansion

I want to get a young servant.

I want to get a young man servant.

I want to get a young man servant to live with me.

I want to get a young man servant to live with me to help keep the house in order.
5. តើការងារនេះមានការបង្កើតជាប្រភេទអ្វី

6. តើប្រភេទអ្វីដែលប្រធានបង្កើត

Drill H. Reduction

1. ប្រឹក្សាចេញលើការងារ

2. អ្នកមានអ្វីដែលប្រធានបង្កើត

3. អ្នកមានអ្វីដែលប្រធានបង្កើត

4. អ្នកមានអ្វីដែលប្រធានបង្កើត

5. អ្នកមានអ្វីដែលប្រធានបង្កើត

Drill I. Substitution

1. ការងារកំពុនប្រធានបង្កើតបាន

2. អ្នកមានអ្វីដែលប្រធានបង្កើត

3. អ្នកមានអ្វីដែលប្រធានបង្កើត

4. អ្នកមានអ្វីដែលប្រធានបង្កើត

5. អ្នកមានអ្វីដែលប្រធានបង្កើត

In two more months I will be 18 years old.

In four more months I will be 18 years old.

In four more months I will be 21 years old.

In three more months my children will enter school.

In one more month my children will finish school.

In two more months my children will finish school.
Drill J. Transformation

MODEL:  

Teacher: I am 17 years ten months old.

Student: In two months more, I will be 18 years old.
1.  Are your parents both living now?

2.  My father's dead; now there's just my mother.

3.  How many brothers and sisters do you have?

4.  I have one older sister who's married already.

5.  And she lives with my mother at present.

6.  What does your brother-in-law do for a living?

7.  He farms to help my mother because she is old.

8.  How many months have you been in this city?

9.  I've been in this city just one month.

10. Did you used to work for somebody?
I used to work as a servant for the chief of a srok in Takeo for about a year.
Drill A. Substitution

1. អ្នកមានបрат និងបក់នៅក្នុងក្រុងនេះមិនឃុំ?  
    Do you have brothers and sisters in this city?
2. អ្នកស្វែងរកតូចមិនឃុំ?  
    Do you know anyone in this city?
3. អ្នកមានប្រសើរមិនឃុំ?  
    Do you have friends in this city?
4. អ្នកមានផ្ទះមិនឃុំ?  
    Do you have a house in this city?
5. អ្នកមានអ្នកកម្រិតមិនឃុំ?  
    Do you have anyone to come get you in this city?
6. អ្នកមានចំនួនអ្នកធ្វើអំពីធានារាស់មិនឃុំ?  
    Have you seen anything interesting (strange) in this city?
7. អ្នកមានចំនួនអ្នកធ្វើអំពីជីវិតមិនឃុំ?  
    Have you bought anything in this city?
8. អ្នកមានការងារមិនឃុំ?  
    Have you any business in this city?
9. អ្នកមានស្ត្រាប់សម័្្ចាមិនឃុំ?  
    Have you met Koma in this city?

Drill B. Substitution

1. ខ្ញុំមានបратបំផុតមិនឃុំ, និងគារមានដែលរីកដឹងបងប្អូនមកបាន។  
    I have only one older brother, and he has a wife already.
2. ខ្ញុំមានប្រិយាបតីបំផុតមិនឃុំ, និងគារមានដែលរីកដឹងបងប្អូនមកបាន។  
    I have only one older sister, and she has a husband already.
3. ខ្ញុំមានបратចុងបំផុតមិនឃុំ, និងគារមានដែលរីកដឹងបងប្អូនមកបាន។  
    I have only one younger brother, and he has a wife already.
4. ខ្ញុំមានបратឈើសុតា្មិនឃុំ, និងគារមានដែលរីកដឹងបងប្អូនមកបាន។  
    I have only one brother-in-law, and he has children already.
5. ខ្ញុំមានបратចុងកុមារមិនឃុំ, និងគារមានដែលរីកដឹងបងប្អូនមកបាន។  
    I have only one younger uncle, and he has a wife already.
6. មិនអាចធ្វើបានធ្វើទៅក្នុងជាតិបី៖
   សុខសាលាទីមន់។

7. អ្នកមានក្នុងបញ្ហាខាងក្រោយ
   គឺអ្វីជាមួយដែលបានចាប់ដំណើរការ?

8. អ្នកមានក្នុងបញ្ហាខ្លាំង
   ដែលបានចាប់ដំណើរការ?

Drill C. Response

MODEL: នេះ អ្នកមានបង្រីលាក់ណាមួយ
   ហៅដែលជាស្តង់ដារបាន? (មានជីវិត)
   នេះ អ្នកមានក្នុងបញ្ហាខ្លាំង
   ដែលបានចាប់ដំណើរការ?

Teacher: Who is living with your older brother these days?

Student: Now he doesn’t have anyone living with him except a younger brother (sister)-in-law.
Drill D. Response

MODEL: ៣១: បានឈ្នះពេញរដ្ឋាភិបាលរាជធានីឬ សេដ្ឋកិច្ចរាជធានីឬ ប្រការិកស្ថានិភាពឬ សម្រាប់ការអប់រំរបស់អ្នកបានបង្កាប់យ៉ាងណា? 

Teacher: Have you met Miss Samnang yet or not?

Student: I didn't have a chance to meet her yet, I just arrived.

Drill E. Response

MODEL: ៣២: បានមានរបស់បច្ចុប្បន្នរបស់អ្នកស្មើរដ្ឋាភិបាលផ្សេងៗទៀត់? 

Teacher: Have you ever used this machine?

Student: I have used it, but I've probably forgotten how by now.
Drill F. Questioning

**MODEL:** តើ: អ្នកបានប្រើមួយម៉ូស៊ីតម៉ាស៊ីនផ្សេងៗទៀតមួយដែរឬទេ? ខោរៈ: អ្នកបានប្រើមួយម៉ូស៊ីតម៉ាស៊ីនផ្សេងៗទៀតមួយដែរឬទេ? កុម្មុះ: អ្នកបានប្រើមួយម៉ូស៊ីតម៉ាស៊ីនផ្សេងៗទៀតមួយដែរឬទេ?

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>តើអ្នកបានប្រើមួយម៉ូស៊ីតម៉ាស៊ីនផ្សេងៗទៀតមួយដែរឬទេ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>តើអ្នកបានប្រើមួយម៉ូស៊ីតម៉ាស៊ីនផ្សេងៗទៀតមួយដែរឬទេ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>តើអ្នកបានប្រើមួយម៉ូស៊ីតម៉ាស៊ីនផ្សេងៗទៀតមួយដែរឬទេ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>តើអ្នកបានប្រើមួយម៉ូស៊ីតម៉ាស៊ីនផ្សេងៗទៀតមួយដែរឬទេ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>តើអ្នកបានប្រើមួយម៉ូស៊ីតម៉ាស៊ីនផ្សេងៗទៀតមួយដែរឬទេ?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Teacher:** I used to use this machine.

**Student:** Have you ever used this machine?
Drill G. Transformation

MODEL: ចុះៗ ក្នុងលីបេះនាមារណ៍ នេះ ស្រាប់ តើទើបត្រូវការវិធី ស្រាប់ ការសិក្សាគឺ។

1. ស្រាប់ច្រើននេះវិធីប្រការណ៍
2. ក្នុងបរិយាកាសនេះអ្នកប្រការណ៍ ដូចខ្លះ
3. ក្នុងពេលបានបញ្ជាក់ស្រាប់ អ្នកប្រការណ៍ នេះ
4. ស្រាប់ច្រើននេះវិធីប្រការណ៍
5. ស្រាប់ច្រើននេះវិធីប្រការណ៍
6. ប្រការណ៍ផ្ដៀតផ្ដាក់មុខដ្ឋា នេះ
7. ស្រាប់ច្រើននេះវិធីប្រការណ៍

Teacher: I haven't met Miss Samnang yet.

Student: I haven't met her yet. I just arrived.

Drill H. Transformation

MODEL: ក្នុងការប្រការណ៍ (មិត្ត) ពីមើលឃើញ។

1. ស្រាប់ច្រើននេះវិធីប្រការណ៍ (អ្នក)
2. ប្រការណ៍ផ្ដៀតផ្ដាក់មុខដ្ឋា (អ្នក)
3. ស្រាប់ច្រើននេះវិធីប្រការណ៍ (អ្នក)

Teacher: She has a younger brother-in-law.

Student: Besides this she has a young servant living with her.
Drill I. Substitution

1. ដើម្បីជីវការនៅទីក្រុងនេះខ្លះ
   (I have lived in this town)
2. ដើម្បីជីវការនៅផ្លែីនេះ
   (I have lived in this house)
3. ដើម្បីជីវការនៅឆ្នាំនេះ
   (I have lived in this year)
4. ដើម្បីជីវការនៅឆ្នាំមួយ
   (I have served him one year)
5. ដើម្បីជីវការនៅឆ្នាំមួយ
   (I have served him about one year)
6. ដើម្បីជីវការនៅខែមីនាខ្លះ
   (I have lived in this month)
7. ដើម្បីជីវការនៅខែមីនាលីប់
   (I have lived in this month)
8. ដើម្បីជីវការនៅខែនិមី
   (I have lived in this month)
9. ដើម្បីជីវការនៅខែមីនាលីប់
   (I have lived in this month)

Drill J. Response

MODEL: ខុស: មានកីឡាដ៏ឈ្មោះណូន្ធ ដើម្បីធ្វើឱ្យបានជីវការនៅខ្លះ ខន្ធ: ខុសទេ (ត្រូវបានមានកីឡាដ៏ឈ្មោះណូន្ធ)

Teacher: How many months ago did you come to live in this city? (just one month)

Student: I have lived in this city just one month.
1. បញ្ងូរៈៗ នារី ប្រែឈួប់ៗ មិន មាន?  
(ដ៖ នារី)

2. ប្រសិនបើការងារបញ្ហាជាមួយ សួរ សូម? (ដ៖ នារី) 

3. ប្រសិនបើការងារបញ្ហាជាមួយ សូម? (ដ៖ នារី) 

4. ប្រសិនបើការងារបញ្ហាជាមួយ សូម? (ដ៖ នារី) 

5. ប្រសិនបើការងារបញ្ហាជាមួយ សូម? (ដ៖ នារី)
UNIT 58

BASIC DIALOGUE

1.  តើអ្នកអាចធ្វើអ្វី?  
    Sok

2.  ខ្ញុំអាចធ្វើប្រាក់បានប៉ុណ្ណោះ។  
    Kim

3.  ខ្ញុំមិនចុះចុំបាននេះពេញលេញ។  
    But I'm not very good at cooking.

4.  ខ្ញុំអាចសោះសោះសម្រាប់អាគនីអន្តរ  
    I can clean the house and wash  
    and iron clothes

5.  អ្នកស្វែងប្រឈមក្នុងការជូនសម្លេងម្រូវការ?  
    Sok

6.  ខ្ញុំស្វែងប្រឈមក្នុងការជូនសម្លេងអាស្រ័យ  
    Kim

7.  អ្នកស្វែងប្រឈមក្នុងការជូនសម្លេង  
    Sok

8.  ខ្ញុំមិនចុះចុំប្រាក់បានប៉ុណ្ណោះ។  
    Kim

9.  គ្រប់ពេលអ្វីក៏ប្រឈមយោង  
    Besides these things, maybe  
    I'll need to send you to the  
    market once in a while.

10.  ខ្ញុំមិនចុះចុំបានប៉ុណ្ណោះ។  
    Kim

11.  អ្នកអាចធ្វើតាមអ្វីដែលខ្ញុំអាចធ្វើ  
    I don't mind; if there's something  
    I can do, I'll always do it.

12.  នេះជាសម្លេងរាងជាច្រើន  
    Sok

13.  ខ្ញុំចុះចុំបាន  
    That's very good. I like someone
who doesn't mind.

I only ask that if I make a mistake, please forgive me.

O.K., don't worry.

Thank you very much.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. មិនឃ្លាកនេះឬព្យាយាមមិនឃ្លាកនេះ ខ្លួនឯង
   I can prepare food some, but I'm not very good at it.

2. មិនឃ្លាកក្នុងជីវិតមកដល់ជីវិតមកដល់ខ្លួនឯង
   I can iron clothes some, but I'm not very good at it.

3. មិនឃ្លាកសម្រាប់មកដល់សម្រាប់មកដល់ខ្លួនឯង
   I can serve guests some, but I'm not very good at it.

4. មិនឃ្លាកសម្រាប់មកដល់សម្រាប់មកដល់ខ្លួនឯង
   I know how to mix drinks some, but I'm not very good at it.

5. មិនឃ្លាកសម្រាប់មកដល់សម្រាប់មកដល់ខ្លួនឯង
   I know how to drive some, but I'm not very good at it.

6. មិនឃ្លាកសម្រាប់មកដល់សម្រាប់មកដល់ខ្លួនឯង
   I know how to take care of the house some, but I'm not very good at it.

7. មិនឃ្លាកសម្រាប់មកដល់សម្រាប់មកដល់ខ្លួនឯង
   I know how to do the laundry some, but I'm not very good at it.

8. មិនឃ្លាកសម្រាប់មកដល់សម្រាប់មកដល់ខ្លួនឯង
   I know how to buy food some, but I'm not very good at it.

9. មិនឃ្លាកសម្រាប់មកដល់សម្រាប់មកដល់ខ្លួនឯង
   I know how to receive guests some, but I'm not very good at it.

Drill B. Transformation

MODEL: មិនឃ្លាកសម្រាប់មកដល់ខ្លួនឯង
   Teacher: I'm not very good at preparing food.

Student: មិនឃ្លាកសម្រាប់មកដល់ខ្លួនឯង
   Student: I can prepare food some, but I'm not very good at it.
Drill C  Substitution

1. ប្រុស នាងកូន នឹងកើតឡើង ។
Pon, this evening I want you to go
2. ប្រុស បាតុលី នឹងកើតឡើង ។
buy some Somloa Mauy to bring
3. ប្រុស បាតុលី នឹងកើតឡើង ។
back to eat.
4. ប្រុស បាតុលី នឹងកើតឡើង ។
Pon, this evening I want you to go
5. ប្រុស បាតុលី នឹងកើតឡើង ។
buy some Battambang oranges to
6. ប្រុស បាតុលី នឹងកើតឡើង ។
bring back to eat.
7. ប្រុស បាតុលី នឹងកើតឡើង ។
Pon, this evening I want you to go
8. ប្រុស បាតុលី នឹងកើតឡើង ។
buy some watermelons to bring
9. ប្រុស បាតុលី នឹងកើតឡើង ។
back to eat.

Pon, this evening I want you to go
buy some canned lychees to bring
back to eat.

Pon, this evening I want you to go
buy some dried fish to bring
back to eat.

Pon, this evening I want you to go
buy some bread to bring back to
eat.

Pon, this evening I want you to go
buy some crabs to bring back to
eat.

Pon, this evening I want you to go
buy some lobster to bring back to
eat.

Pon, this evening I want you to go
buy some corn to bring back to eat.

Pon, this evening I want you to go buy some roast pork to bring back to eat.

Teacher: I'm looking for someone who knows how to wash and iron too.

Student: O.K., Bora was very good at washing and ironing when he was with me.

I like to cook even though I'm not very good at it.

I like to eat vegetables even though
I don't know how you prepare them.

I like to come along this street even though I have to go out of my way a little.

I like to go to Cambodian wats even though I'm not a Buddhist.

I like to eat kuy-tiav even though I've eaten it already.

I like to visit Angkor Wat even though I've already seen it.

I like coffee even though I know it does not taste good.

I like to listen to you speak Cambodian even though I still don't understand much.

I like to go out for a good time even though I don't have money.

I like to study Cambodian even though I still haven't gone to Cambodia.

I like to read the newspaper even though I listened to the news on the radio.

I like to travel by ship even though I have never ridden in a plane.

Drill F. Transformation

MODEL: Teacher: I like to cook very much, even though I'm not very good at it.

Student: I'm not very good at it, but I like to cook very much.

1. 2.
Drill G. Response

MODEL: ខ្ញុះ: ការអប់រំនិងការសិក្សាជំនួយ ត្រូវបានធ្វើឡើងអាច នឹងមានប្រភេទទូំនៅក្នុងការសិក្សាដែលបានធ្វើឡើងមក? កូនតូច: តើអ្នកសិក្សាជំនួយ ត្រូវធ្វើឡើងអាច នឹងមានប្រភេទទូំនៅក្នុងការសិក្សាញើង? ខ្ញុះ: មានជាច្រើនប្រភេទទូំនៅក្នុងការសិក្សាញើង។

Teacher: ស្តីម៉ា, តើអ្នកចុះចុរីអាច ខ្លួនឯង អាចរកឃើញថាជំនួយ អាក្រកោណដែលមានទីតាំងអ្វី? ស្តីម៉ា: បានទេ, តើអ្នកប្រាប់រួមទេ? ស្តីម៉ា: ស្តីម៉ា។

Student: គ្រប់គ្រងដំណើរការរថយនាកុមារ ធ្វើឡើងអាច នឹងមានប្រភេទទូំនៅក្នុងការធ្វើដំណើរការធ្វើឡើងមក? ស្តីម៉ា: មានជាច្រើនប្រភេទទូំនៅក្នុងការធ្វើដំណើរការធ្វើឡើងមក។

Teacher: តើអ្នកចុះចុរីអាច រកឃើញថាជំនួយ អាក្រកោណដែលមានទីតាំងមួយ? ស្តីម៉ា: បានទេ, តើអ្នកប្រាប់រួមទេ? ស្តីម៉ា: ស្តីម៉ា។

Student: គ្រប់គ្រងការយល់មើលក្នុងលេខ២ ធ្វើឡើងអាច នឹងមានប្រភេទទូំនៅក្នុងការយល់មើលក្នុងលេខ២ធ្វើឡើងមក? ស្តីម៉ា: មានជាច្រើនប្រភេទទូំនៅក្នុងការយល់មើលក្នុងលេខ២ធ្វើឡើងមក។

Teacher: តើអ្នកចុះចុរីអាច នឹងមានប្រភេទទូំនៅក្នុងការសិក្សាញើងអាច រកឃើញថាជំនួយ អាក្រកោណដែលមានទីតាំងអ្វី? ស្តីម៉ា: បានទេ, តើអ្នកប្រាប់រួមទេ? ស្តីម៉ា: ស្តីម៉ា។
Drill H. Transformation

MODEL: ដែល ប៉ុល ក្រុមអនុវត្ត ឆ្លាតឬស្រើស្រួលពីរាងដែលខ្លាច? ខ្លាច: វិស្សីប្រយ័ត្នស្រែជាមួយ ចន្លោះការសម្រោម

1. បង្ហាញអំពីការេស្រើស្រួលពីរាងដែលខ្លាច? រាងដែលខ្លាច?
2. បង្ហាញអំពីការសម្រោមស្រើស្រួលពីរាងដែលខ្លាច?
3. បង្ហាញអំពីការនិងការអភិវឌ្ឍស្រើស្រួលពីរាងដែលខ្លាច?
4. បង្ហាញអំពីការសម្រោមប្រឈមស្រើស្រួលពីរាងដែលខ្លាច?
5. បង្ហាញអំពីការសម្រោមស្រើស្រួលពីរាងដែលខ្លាច?
6. បង្ហាញអំពីការនិងការអភិវឌ្ឍស្រើស្រួលពីរាងដែលខ្លាច?

Drill I. Response

MODEL: បើ អ្នកប្រឈមស្រើស្រួលពីរាងដែលខ្លាច? ខ្លាច: ក្លាយមកប្រឈមស្រើស្រួលពីរាងដែលខ្លាច?

1. អ្នកប្រឈមស្រើស្រួលពីរាងដែលខ្លាច? រាងដែលខ្លាច?
2. អ្នកប្រឈមស្រើស្រួលពីរាងដែលខ្លាច? រាងដែលខ្លាច?
3. អ្នកប្រឈមស្រើស្រួលពីរាងដែលខ្លាច? រាងដែលខ្លាច?
4. អ្នកប្រឈមស្រើស្រួលពីរាងដែលខ្លាច? រាងដែលខ្លាច?
5. អ្នកប្រឈមស្រើស្រួលពីរាងដែលខ្លាច? រាងដែលខ្លាច?

Teacher: Pon, please go buy the newspaper Kampuchia for me.

Student: I need to send Pon to go buy the newspaper Kampuchia.

Teacher: Do you know how to serve food and drinks to guests?

Student: I know something about serving food and drinks to guests.
Drill J. Substitution

1.  If there's anything I'm able to do, I'll do it.

2.  If there's anything I can do, I'll do it.

3.  If there's anything I (can do) to help, I'll do it.

4.  If there's anything I (can do) to help, I'll help.

5.  If there's anybody I can help I'll help.

6.  If there's anybody who asks me to help, I'll help.

7.  If there's anybody who wants to send me to do something, I'll help.

8.  If there's anybody who wants to send me to do something, I'll do it.

9.  If there's anything I can do, I'll do it.
UNIT 59

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. ដែលប្រឈមខួរមិនឃុំ?  
    Sok: How much do you want a month?

2. តើ អតិថិជនអ្វីរាង្គ?  
    Kim: That's up to you alone.

3. អតិថិជនឈប់ពីខ្មែរ?  
    Sok: I plan to give you 500 a month, and you'll eat here with me. Is that all right?

4. ប្រាប់អតិថិជនប្រឈមក្នុងខ្មែរ  
    Kim: If you have an empty room, I'd like to stay (there) too, because I haven't got any place to stay.

5. ខុសប្រាប់ក្នុងពន្ធនាគារ  
    Sok: I have a small room in back. You can stay there.

6. អស់ប្រាប់អតិថិជន?  
    Kim: Thank you very much.

7. ប្រាប់អតិថិជនទៀតធ្វើ?  
    Sok: What day can you come and start?

8. យោងយើងធ្វើឲ្យមិនក្រី  
    Kim: Any day. I don't have many things.

9. សូមប្រាប់អតិថិជន  
    Sok: In that case come tomorrow.

10. មកៅ?  
    Kim: O.K.

11. ប្រាប់អតិថិជនមិនឃុំ  
    Sok: Come at 8:00 A.M., I'll give you the keys before I go to work.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. I don't have many things.
   ខ្មែរ: ខ្ញុំមិនមានច្រើនការមកផ្លាញ់។

2. I don't have any heavy work.
   ខ្មែរ: ខ្ញុំមិនមានសម្រាប់សារធំមកផ្លាញ់。

3. I don't have any free rooms.
   ខ្មែរ: ខ្ញុំមិនមានស្ថានភាពយឺត​បាន​ណា。

4. I don't have a lot of guests coming.
   ខ្មែរ: ខ្ញុំមិនមានស្ថានភាពមកចិត្តនាពេលក្លៀង。

5. I don't have any heavy things.
   ខ្មែរ: ខ្ញុំមិនមានមុខក្រុមទ្វីះជ្ឈាប់ប្រាក់。

6. I don't have any small rooms.
   ខ្មែរ: ខ្ញុំមិនមានស្ថានភាពមកចិត្តមូលដ្ឋាន។

7. I don't have any free cars.
   ខ្មែរ: ខ្ញុំមិនមានស្ថានភាពទឹកកង់មកផ្លាញ់。

8. I don't have any place to stay.
   ខ្មែរ: ខ្ញុំមិនមានស្ថានភាពបставка។

9. I don't have many things.
   ខ្មែរ: ខ្ញុំមិនមានច្រើនអស្ប័យច្រើន។

Drill B. Response

MODEL: ខ្មែរ: បានសិក្សាឡិតឈាងមកផ្លាញ់ៗ មានប្រាក់ឬមានរាត្តឹមមកផ្លាញ់មកផ្លាញ់ៗ បាននេះព័ត៌មានថាជាពេលខ្លីមកផ្លាញ់ៗ ខ្មែរ: បានសិក្សាឡិតឈាងមកផ្លាញ់ៗ មានប្រាក់ឬមានរាត្តឹមមកផ្លាញ់មកផ្លាញ់ៗ បាននេះព័ត៌មានថាជាពេលខ្លីមកផ្លាញ់ៗ

Teacher: Why are you looking for a free room? (have no place to stay)

Student: I'm looking for a free room because I have no place to stay.
Drill C. Variable Substitution

1. ប្រសិទ្ធភាព​មួយក្នុងប្រការ ឬ 
    អ្វីដែលមាន
2. ប្រសិទ្ធភាព​ក្នុងប្រការ ឬ 
    អ្វីដែលមាន
3. ប្រសិទ្ធភាព​ក្នុងប្រការ ឬ 
    អ្វីដែលមាន
4. ប្រសិទ្ធភាព​មួយក្នុងប្រការ ឬ 
    អ្វីដែលមាន
5. ប្រសិទ្ធភាព​ក្នុងប្រការ ឬ 
    អ្វីដែលមាន
6. ប្រសិទ្ធភាព​មួយក្នុងប្រការ ឬ 
    អ្វីដែលមាន
7. ប្រសិទ្ធភាព​មួយក្នុងប្រការ ឬ 
    អ្វីដែលមាន
8. ប្រសិទ្ធភាព​មួយក្នុងប្រការ ឬ 
    អ្វីដែលមាន

Drill D. Response

MODEL: មានប្រសិទ្ធភាព ៨០០ រីង?  (៨០០, រស់មានអារម៖)

Teacher: How much salary do you plan to give me? (500, eat with me)

Student: I plan to give you 500 a month, and you'll eat with me.
4. លោកអ្នកមានពីរស្រោមណ៍ទេ? (៣០០ ក្រុមស្រោមស្រោម)

5. លោកអ្នកមានឈានឈានទេ? (២០០ ក្រុមពីរស្រោមស្រោម)

6. លោកអ្នកមានឈានឈានទេ? (៤០០ ក្រុមពីរស្រោមស្រោម)

Drill E. Transformation

MODEL: ចាមួយមានពីរស្រោមស្រោម (ស្រោម)

Teacher: I have a lot of things.

Student: I don't have a lot of things.

1. កូនមានអាហារណ៍ (ស្រោម)

2. កូនមានមានឈានឈាន (ស្រោម)

3. កូនមានមានសារធានា (ស្រោម)

4. កូនមានមានសារធានា (ស្រោម)

5. កូនមានមានឈានឈាន (ស្រោម)

6. កូនមានមានសារធានា (ស្រោម)

Drill F. Transformation

MODEL: ខ្ញុះមានពីរស្រោមស្រោម (ស្រោម)

Teacher: I don't have a lot of things.

Student: I have a lot of things.

1. ខ្ញុះមានអាហារណ៍ (ស្រោម)

2. ខ្ញុះមានអាហារណ៍ (ស្រោម)

3. ខ្ញុះមានអាហារណ៍ (ស្រោម)

4. ខ្ញុះមានអាហារណ៍ (ស្រោម)

5. ខ្ញុះមានអាហារណ៍ (ស្រោម)

6. ខ្ញុះមានអាហារណ៍ (ស្រោម)
Drill G. Substitution

1. ពេញថ្ងៃណាម្តាយបាន?  
   What day can you come to stay?
2. ពេញថ្ងៃណាម្តាយបាន?  
   What day can you come to work?
3. ពេញថ្ងៃណាម្តាយក្រៀមបាន?  
   What time can you come to work?
4. ពេញថ្ងៃណាម្តាយក្រៀមបាន?  
   What time can you come to study?
5. ពេញថ្ងៃណាម្តាយឆ្នាំបាន?  
   What month can you come to study?
6. ពេញថ្ងៃណាម្តាយឆ្នាំបាន?  
   What month can you come to work?
7. ពេញថ្ងៃណាម្តាយឆ្នាំបាន?  
   What day can you come to stay?
8. ពេញថ្ងៃណាម្តាយឆ្នាំបាន?  
   What day can you come to stay?

Drill H. Response

MODEL: សូត្រ: ពេញថ្ងៃណាម្តាយបាន?  
(រង្វង់ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍)  
សូមមិនមែនមួយក្នុងវៀត៍  
(វៀតរៀសទឹក)  

Teacher: What day can you move in? (don't have many things)

Student: Any day is all right. I don't have many things.
Drill I. Expansion

1. Don't be offended.
2. Please don't be offended.
3. I only ask, please don't be offended.
4. I only ask, if I do something wrong, please don't be offended.
5. I only ask, if I do something a little bit wrong, please don't be offended.

Drill J. Reduction

1. I only ask, if I do something a little bit wrong, please don't be offended.
2. I ask, if I do something a little bit wrong, please don't be offended.
3. I ask (if I) do something wrong, please don't be offended.
4. I ask (if I) do something wrong, don't be offended.
5. (If I) do something wrong, don't be offended.
6. Don't be offended.
UNIT 60

NARRATION

1. They're talking about the way to find a person to come help do the various tasks in the house.
2. One friend asks his friend, "Is it difficult to hire a servant in this country?"
3. His friend says, "It's not difficult if the person who wants to hire the servant has a Cambodian friend."
4. "He can ask his friend to help look."
5. "But he has to know if he wants to hire a servant to come cook or come clean the house."
6. The person who wants to have a servant needs a person who knows how to cook and clean up the house.
7. He asks his Cambodian friend to help look for him.
8. His friend brought a servant to meet him.
9. The servant's name is Kim, his native village is Takeo Province.
10. In two more months he will be 18.

----------

1. ឈុតីហើយឈុតីបុរសី ឈុតីកុទ្រុងបង្ហាំងៗ ជាបញ្ហាអ្វើច្រើន រីឈុតីឈុតីបុរសី ឈុតីកុទ្រុងបង្ហាំងៗ ជាបញ្ហាអ្វើច្រើន
2. បុរសីបុរសីបុរសីបុរសី ហើយ ឈុតីកុទ្រុងបង្ហាំងៗ
3. បុរសីបុរសីបុរសីបុរសី ហើយ ឈុតីកុទ្រុងបង្ហាំងៗ
4. បុរសីបុរសីបុរសីបុរសី ហើយ ឈុតីកុទ្រុងបង្ហាំងៗ
1. Kim has only his mother now; his father died a long time ago.
2. Kim has an older sister who is married.
4. The person who wants to have Kim help with the work asks Kim, "What does your brother-in-law do to earn a living?"
5. Kim answers, "He grows rice to help my mother because she is very old."
6. He asks Kim further, how many months he has lived in the city.
7. Kim says he just came to live (here) a month ago.
8. Before coming here he worked in Takeo Province.
9. Kim used to be a servant for the chief of a srok in Takeo.
10. He worked there for about a year.

1. នាយមានប្រាក់សុខិត្រដូចក្នុងរឿងចម្លើយ។
2. ប្រាក់សុខិត្រដូចថាគឺសុខិត្រដូចក្នុងរឿងចម្លើយ។
3. ក្នុងសុខិត្រដូចថាគឺសុខិត្រដូចក្នុងរឿងចម្លើយ។
4. ក្នុងសុខិត្រដូចថាគឺសុខិត្រដូចក្នុងរឿងចម្លើយ។
5. ក្នុងសុខិត្រដូចថាគឺសុខិត្រដូចក្នុងរឿងចម្លើយ។
6. ក្នុងសុខិត្រដូចថាគឺសុខិត្រដូចក្នុងរឿងចម្លើយ។
7. ក្នុងសុខិត្រដូចថាគឺសុខិត្រដូចក្នុងរឿងចម្លើយ។
8. ក្នុងសុខិត្រដូចថាគឺសុខិត្រដូចក្នុងរឿងចម្លើយ។
9. ក្នុងសុខិត្រដូចថាគឺសុខិត្រដូចក្នុងរឿងចម្លើយ។
10. ក្នុងសុខិត្រដូចថាគឺសុខិត្រដូចក្នុងរឿងចម្លើយ។

1. Kim says he's not very good at cooking.
2. When he was with the chief of the srok he was the housekeeper and did the laundry.
3. The person who wants to hire Kim asks him if he knows how to serve guests.
4. Kim knows how to serve food and drinks to guests.
1. If Kim wants the job.
2. The man asks Kim what his salary is.
3. Kim says he wants $200 a month.
4. The man says, "That won't be enough money to live on.
5. Kim says, "I'll give you another $50 a month.
6. The man says, "Are you sure?"
7. Kim says, "Yes, I am.
8. Then they discuss salary and the work.
9. He asks Kim how much salary he wants.
10. Kim isn't decided; he says, "It depends on you."
UNIT 61

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. ពណ៌គារីពិសេសមាន់?  (Where are we planning on going tomorrow?)

2. ពណ៌គារីពិសេសមាន់ឈ្មោះអ្វី?  (Tomorrow we'll take a trip to Kompong Cham.)

3. ការងារបណ្តាលមាន់អ្វី?  (What's Kompong Cham like? Can you tell me a little bit?)

4. ការងារបណ្តាលមាន់អ្វី?  (Kompong Cham is a very clean and modern city which is located on the banks of the Mekong.)

5. មាសិនដើម្បីទៅក្នុងក្រុងមាន់?  (Are there a lot of boats from Phnom Penh to Kompong Cham?)

6. មាសិនដើម្បីទៅក្នុងក្រុងមាន់?  (Yes, there are a lot of boats from Phnom Penh going to Kompong Cham and coming back from Kompong Cham to Phnom Penh.)

7. ប៉ោសប៉ោសមាន់មាន់?  (How many hours does the boat take from Phnom Penh to Kompong Cham?)

8.  (Oh, I think about twelve hours or more. The boat stops at a lot of places along the way.)

9. ដែលមាន់មាន់?  (Do we have to buy the tickets in advance?)
10. សូមរករ គ្រប់គ្រងទំនិញ ត្រូវបានលក់ដល់ពេលណាអំពី?  

Sok  
It's not necessary. They don't sell the tickets until the boat leaves.

11. អាចមានក្រុមប៊ូត់ក្នុងអំឡុងពេលណាអំពី?  

Pon  
How much does the boat charge from Phnom Penh to Kompong Cham?

Sok  
It's not very expensive, maybe twenty-five riels; that's all.

Pon  
What time should we get on the boat?

Sok  
Four in the morning. We're going on that boat so it'll be a little cool. We have to get to the docks at three or, at the latest, three-thirty. The boat won’t wait for us; when the time comes to leave, it leaves immediately. In that case we have to get there ahead of time.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. ក្រុងកែវស៊ីមួយៗក្រុងនៅក្នុង រឿងមួយក្នុង។
   Kompong Cham is a city that is beautiful and modern.

2. ក្រុងកែវស៊ីមួយៗក្រុងនៅក្នុង រឿងមួយក្នុង។
   Kompong Cham is a city that is large and important.

3. ក្រុងកែវស៊ីមួយៗក្រុងនៅក្នុង រឿងមួយក្នុង។
   Phnom Penh is a city that is large and important.

4. ក្រុងកែវស៊ីមួយៗក្រុងនៅក្នុង រឿងមួយក្នុង។
   Phnom Penh is a city that is located on the Mekong.

5. ក្រុងកែវស៊ីមួយៗក្រុងនៅក្នុង រឿងមួយក្នុង។
   Stung Treng is a city that is located on the Mekong.

6. ក្រុងកែវស៊ីមួយៗក្រុងនៅក្នុង រឿងមួយក្នុង។
   Stung Treng is a city that I've known for a long time.

7. ក្រុងកែវស៊ីមួយៗក្រុងនៅក្នុង រឿងមួយក្នុង។
   Kompong Cham is a city that I've known for a long time.

8. ក្រុងកែវស៊ីមួយៗក្រុងនៅក្នុង រឿងមួយក្នុង។
   Kompong Cham is a city that is beautiful and modern.

Drill B. Response

MODEL: តើ: ក្រុងណាមួយៗមានរឿងមួយក្នុង? (ឃើញសម្រាប់កុមារ)
   ឃើញ: ក្រុងណាមួយៗមានរឿងមួយក្នុង។

1. តើ: ក្រុងណាមួយៗមានរឿងមួយក្នុង? (ឃើញសម្រាប់កុមារ)
   ឃើញ: ក្រុងណាមួយៗមានរឿងមួយក្នុង។

2. តើ: ក្រុងណាមួយៗមានរឿងមួយក្នុង? (ឃើញសម្រាប់កុមារ)
   ឃើញ: ក្រុងណាមួយៗមានរឿងមួយក្នុង។

3. តើ: ក្រុងណាមួយៗមានរឿងមួយក្នុង? (ឃើញសម្រាប់កុមារ)
   ឃើញ: ក្រុងណាមួយៗមានរឿងមួយក្នុង។

4. តើ: ក្រុងណាមួយៗមានរឿងមួយក្នុង? (ឃើញសម្រាប់កុមារ)
   ឃើញ: ក្រុងណាមួយៗមានរឿងមួយក្នុង។

Teacher: What kind of a city is Kompong Cham?
(beautiful and modern)
Student: Kompong Cham is a city that is beautiful and modern.
Drill C. Transformation

MODEL: ឃុំឬសិរីមានប្រភេទប៊ីភ្លេង

Teacher: The city of Kompong Cham is located along the banks of the Mekong.

Student: Kompong Cham is a city that is located along the banks of the Mekong.

Drill D. Substitution

1. ហិរញ្ញវត្ថុផ្សំគឺជាលេខប៉ុន្តែ

How many hours does it take the boat to go from Phnom Penh to Kompong Cham?
2. ស្នាដៃអ្នកចុះចាប់បាន ចាប់តាមម៉ាស៊ីន?  
   តើ អ្នកចុះចាប់បាន ចាប់តាមម៉ាស៊ីន?  
   តើ អ្នកចុះចាប់បាន ចាប់តាមម៉ាស៊ីន?  
   តើ អ្នកចុះចាប់បាន ចាប់តាមម៉ាស៊ីន?  
   តើ អ្នកចុះចាប់បាន ចាប់តាមម៉ាស៊ីន?  
   តើ អ្នកចុះចាប់បាន ចាប់តាមម៉ាស៊ីន?  
   តើ អ្នកចុះចាប់បាន ចាប់តាមម៉ាស៊ីន?  
   តើ អ្នកចុះចាប់បាន ចាប់តាមម៉ាស៊ីន?  

Drill E. Response

MODEL: ម៉ាស៊ីនហៅពាក់កណ្តាលនៅក្នុងប្រទេស? (ប្រទេសចរិយាសិល)  
   ម៉ាស៊ីនហៅពាក់កណ្តាលនៅក្នុងប្រទេស? (ប្រទេសចរិយាសិល)  
   ម៉ាស៊ីនហៅពាក់កណ្តាលនៅក្នុងប្រទេស? (ប្រទេសចរិយាសិល)  
   ម៉ាស៊ីនហៅពាក់កណ្តាលនៅក្នុងប្រទេស? (ប្រទេសចរិយាសិល)  
   ម៉ាស៊ីនហៅពាក់កណ្តាលនៅក្នុងប្រទេស? (ប្រទេសចរិយាសិល)  
   ម៉ាស៊ីនហៅពាក់កណ្តាលនៅក្នុងប្រទេស? (ប្រទេសចរិយាសិល)  
   ម៉ាស៊ីនហៅពាក់កណ្តាលនៅក្នុងប្រទេស? (ប្រទេសចរិយាសិល)  
   ម៉ាស៊ីនហៅពាក់កណ្តាលនៅក្នុងប្រទេស? (ប្រទេសចរិយាសិល)  

Teacher: How many hours does it take the boat to go from Phnom Penh to Kompong Cham? (maybe 10 hours or more)

Student: The boat takes maybe 10 hours or more.

How many hours does it take the boat to go from Kompong Cham to Phnom Penh?

How many places does the boat stop from Kompong Cham to Phnom Penh?

How much does the boat charge from Kompong Cham to Phnom Penh?

How much does the boat charge from Phnom Penh to Kompong Cham?

Are there many boats from Phnom Penh to Kompong Cham?

How many places does the boat stop from Phnom Penh to Kompong Cham?

How many hours does it take the boat to go from Phnom Penh to Kompong Cham?
Drill F. Substitution

1. ពណ៌ក្រង់ក្រែងស្រែ និង
រៀបចំបាន

2. ពណ៌ក្រង់ក្រែងស្រែ និងដឹង
កិច្ចប្រកួត

3. ពណ៌ក្រង់ក្រែងស្រែនិងកាស
ឈើពាក្យដឹង

4. ពណ៌ក្រង់ក្រែងស្រែពីរសម្រាប់អ្នក
ដឹងណា

5. ប្រឈមធានាខ្លាំងមួយក្នុងកូន
ប្រឈមធានាកិច្ចប្រកួត

6. ឈើនិងកុងាដល់មួយក្នុងកូន
dei khom

7. ពណ៌ក្រង់ក្រែងស្រែក្នុង
ពាក្យដឹង

8. ពណ៌ក្រង់ក្រែងស្រែក្នុង
ពាក្យដឹង

9. ពណ៌ក្រង់ក្រែងស្រែក្នុង
ពាក្យដឹង

Drill G. Response

MODEL: មានការដល់តំលៃគឺ
ការដល់កុងាបាន?

Teacher: ឬ ឬ៖
មានការដល់តំលៃគឺ
ការដល់កុងាបាន

Student: យើងនឹងដល់កុងាបាន
មានការដល់តំលៃគឺ

Teacher: ៖ ៖ ៖ ៖
មានការដល់តំលៃគឺ
ការដល់កុងាបាន

Student: យើងនឹងដល់កុងាបាន
មានការដល់តំលៃគឺ

When it comes time to go, the boat leaves immediately.

When it comes time to go, the boat won't wait for us.

When it gets to be 4:00 in the morning, the boat won't wait for us.

When it gets to be 4:00 in the morning, we have to get to the dock.

When it gets to be 3:30 at the latest, we have to get to the dock.

When it gets to be 3:30 at the latest, the boat leaves the dock.

When it comes time to go, the boat leaves the dock.

When it comes time to go, only then do they sell tickets.

When it comes time to go the boat leaves immediately.

Teacher: At what time do we have to arrive at the dock? (three, three thirty)

Student: We have to arrive at the dock at three o'clock, or at the latest, 3:30.
Drill H. Response

**Teacher:** At what time do we have to arrive at the dock? (three thirty, three)

**Student:** I think we will get to the dock at maybe three thirty, or at the earliest 3 o'clock.

Drill I. Substitution

1. From Phnom Penh to Kompong Cham there are at least 10 boats.

2. From Phnom Penh to Kompong Cham, the boat stops at at least five places.

3. From Kompong Cham to Phnom Penh, the boat stops at at least five places.
4. ដែលជាកន្លែងដែលមានចំនួនទឹកដីរីល 30 នាក់?
   From Kompong Cham to Phnom Penh, they charge at least 20 riels.

5. ដែលជាកន្លែងដែលទឹកដីរីលរំដោះរឹង?
   From Kompong Cham to Phnom Penh the boat takes 8 hours at the fastest.

6. ដែលជាកន្លែងដែលទឹកដីរីលមានចំនួនទឹកដីរីល 10 នាក់?
   From Kompong Cham to Phnom Penh, the boat takes 10 hours at the slowest.

7. ដែលជាកន្លែងដែលមានទឹកដីរីលមានចំនួនទឹកដីរីល 10 នាក់?
   From Phnom Penh to Kompong Cham, the boat takes 10 hours at the slowest.

8. កន្លែងដែលមានទឹកដីរីលមានចំនួនទឹកដីរីល 10 នាក់?
   From Phnom Penh to Kompong Cham there are at least 10 boats.

Drill J. Transformation

MODEL: កំណើតបំពុងពិភាក្សាដូច្នេះ Teacher: There are 10 boats or more.
      ឬយើងចង់ចញញូនឹងម៉ាក 30 នាក់ ឬ Student: There are at least 10 boats.

MODEL: កំណើតបំពុងពិភាក្សាដូច្នេះ Teacher: There are only 10 boats.
      ឬយើងចង់ចញញូនឹងម៉ាក 30 នាក់ ឬ Student: At the most, there are 10 boats.
UNIT 62  
BASIC DIALOGUE

1. ក៏មិនពោរៈប៉ុន្តែ ខ្លួន  
   គេមិនមានការភេចនាក់  
   It's almost time to leave. They are  
   going aboard the boat.

2. ប៉ុន្តែមិនយើងសិនទេ  
   What are the people over there doing?

3. មកមិនមានក្លាយតាមរយៈក្នុង  
   ដូច្នេះក៏មិនមានការភេចនាក់  
   Some are buying food to take to their  
   children who are waiting for them  
   at home.

4. តើ ខ្លួនឯង ឈប់ប្រុស  
   What is that? I heard a whistle blow.

5. ប៉ុន្តែមិនយើងសិនទេ  
   The boat blows the whistle as a  
   signal. It's time to leave.

6. សូមស្គាល់ នាក់របស់អ្នក  
   What are those boatmen doing?

7. ក៏មិនពោរៈប៉ុន្តែ ក្លាយ  
   យើងមិនមានការភេចនា  
   ហើយសូមស្រេចសិន  
   They are untying ropes and chains.  
   And those quiet people sitting  
   are passengers. In a while, someone  
   will come to sell them tickets.

8. តើសូមស្រេចសិន  
   Do all the passengers pay the same  
   price?

9. មិន  
   No. They pay (on the boat) according  
   to the distance.
10.  There is nothing on either side of the river. It's very dark, but once in a while there are dim lights along the edges of the river.

11.  They are fishermen's lights.

12.  In the sky I see a star. It's brighter than the others. What's its name? Do you know?

13.  That's called the "morning star". Do you see a light red color ahead of us?

DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. ប្រើប្រាស់ជាចារ្យនៃអង្គុយរួមមួយ 
   Some people buy things to take to sell.

2. ប្រើប្រាស់ជាចារ្យនៃអង្គុយរួមមួយ 
   Some people buy things to take to their children.

3. ប្រើប្រាស់ជាចារ្យនៃអង្គុយរួមមួយ 
   Some people buy bread to take to their children.

4. ប្រើប្រាស់ជាចារ្យនៃអង្គុយរួមមួយ 
   Some others buy bread to take to their children.

5. ប្រើប្រាស់ជាចារ្យនៃអង្គុយរួមមួយ 
   Some others buy fruit to take to their children.

6. ប្រើប្រាស់ជាចារ្យនៃអង្គុយរួមមួយ 
   Some others buy fruit to take to their parents.

7. ប្រើប្រាស់ជាចារ្យនៃអង្គុយរួមមួយ 
   Some people buy fruit to take to their parents.

8. ប្រើប្រាស់ជាចារ្យនៃអង្គុយរួមមួយ 
   Some people buy things to take to their parents.

9. ប្រើប្រាស់ជាចារ្យនៃអង្គុយរួមមួយ 
   Some people buy things to take to sell.

Drill B. Response

MODEL: ប្រើប្រាស់ជាចារ្យនៃអង្គុយរួមមួយ 
 Teacher: Why is the boat blowing the whistle? 
           (it's time to leave)
           (It takes the passengers)

Student: The boat blows the whistle as a 
         signal that it's time to leave.
Drill C. Transformation

MODEL:  

The workers on the boat untie the ropes and untie the chains.  
As for the passengers, they sit quietly.

Student: At the time the passengers are sitting quietly, the workers on the boat untie the ropes and untie the chains.

Drill D. Substitution

1. The workers will go about selling tickets to the passengers.

2. In another moment the workers will finish selling tickets to the passengers.

3. Now the workers will finish selling
Drill E. Substitution

1. មិនឃុំបង្ហាញថាតើការបន្តនេះមានប្រាក់មួយនៅ បានមិនាំទេ?  
   Do the passengers all pay the same fare?

2. មិនឃុំបង្ហាញថាតើការបន្តនេះមានប្រាក់មួយនៅ បានមិនាំទេ?  
   Do the passengers all travel the same distance?

3. ការបន្តនេះមានការបន្តមួយស្រុសស្រីមិនមានប្រាក់មួយស្រីទេ?  
   Do the boats all travel the same speed?

4. ការបន្តនេះមានការបន្តមួយស្រុសបានមិនបានមិនបាន?  
   Do the fishing boats all travel the same speed?

5. ការបន្តនេះមានការបន្តមួយស្រុសស្រីមិនមានការបន្តមួយស្រីទេ?  
   Are all fishing boats the same size?

6. ការបន្តនេះមានការបន្តមួយស្រុសបានមិនបានមិនបាន?  
   Do all fishing boats cost the same?

7. ការបន្តនេះមានការបន្តមួយស្រុសស្រីមិនមានការបន្តមួយស្រីទេ?  
   Do all the passengers pay the same fare?

8. ការបន្តនេះមានការបន្តមួយស្រុសស្រីមិនមានការបន្តមួយស្រីទេ?  
   Do all the passengers pay the same fare?

4. មិនឃុំបង្ហាញថាតើការបន្តនេះមានការបន្តមួយស្រុសស្រីមិនបានមិនបាន?  
   Now the workers will finish selling tickets to the travellers.

5. មិនឃុំបង្ហាញថាតើការបន្តនេះមានការបន្តមួយស្រុសស្រីមិនបានមិនបាន?  
   Now the workers will blow the whistle to let the travellers know.

6. មិនឃុំបង្ហាញថាតើការបន្តនេះមានការបន្តមួយស្រុសស្រីមិនបានមិនបាន?  
   In another moment the workers will blow the whistle to let the travellers know.

7. មិនឃុំបង្ហាញថាតើការបន្តនេះមានការបន្តមួយស្រុសស្រីមិនបានមិនបាន?  
   In another moment the workers will blow the whistle to let the passengers know.

8. មិនឃុំបង្ហាញថាតើការបន្តនេះមានការបន្តមួយស្រុសស្រីមិនបានមិនបាន?  
   In another moment the workers will go about selling tickets to the passengers.
Drill F. Expansion

1. ការជ្រើសរើស ដូចជា 

2. ការជ្រើសរើស ដូចជា 

3. ការជ្រើសរើស ដូចជា 

4. ការជ្រើសរើស ដូចជា 

5. ការជ្រើសរើស ដូចជា 

6. ការជ្រើសរើស ដូចជា 

According to distance.

No, according to distance.

No, they charge a fare according to distance.

No, they charge a fare which they charge according to distance.

No, they pay a fare according to what they charge by distance.

No, they pay a fare according to the fare which they charge by distance.

Drill G. Reduction

1. ការជ្រើសរើស ដូចជា 

2. ការជ្រើសរើស ដូចជា 

3. ការជ្រើសរើស ដូចជា 

4. ការជ្រើសរើស ដូចជា 

5. ការជ្រើសរើស ដូចជា 

6. ការជ្រើសរើស ដូចជា 

No, they pay a fare according to the fare which they charge by distance.

No, they pay a fare according to what they charge by distance.

No, they charge a fare which they charge according to distance.

No, they charge a fare according to distance.

No, according to distance.

According to distance.

Drill H. Substitution

1. បើអ៊ីសរើស ដូចជា 

2. បើអ៊ីសរើស ដូចជា 

3. បើអ៊ីសរើស ដូចជា 

4. បើអ៊ីសរើស ដូចជា 

If you look at both sides of the river, you won't see anything.

If you look at both sides of the river, you will see many trees.

If you look to the east of the river, you will see many trees.

If you look to the east of the
5. សូងសិទ្ធិបញ្ជាក់នូវថ្ងៃរួចមក កូនកោសុន។
   If you look in the sky, you will see a light red color.

6. សូងសិទ្ធិបញ្ជាក់នូវថ្ងៃរួចមក កូនកោសុន។
   If you look in the sky, you will see the brightest star.

7. សូងសិទ្ធិបញ្ជាក់នូវថ្ងៃរួចមក កូនកោសុន។
   If you look in the direction the boat's going, you will see the brightest star.

8. សូងសិទ្ធិបញ្ជាក់នូវថ្ងៃរួចមក កូនកោសុន។
   If you look in the direction the boat's going, you will see a dim floating light.

9. សូងសិទ្ធិបញ្ជាក់នូវថ្ងៃរួចមក កូនកោសុន។
   If you look along the shore, you will see lights in fishing boats.

10. សូងសិទ្ធិបញ្ជាក់នូវថ្ងៃរួចមក កូនកោសុន។
    If you look along the shore, you will see lights in fishing boats.

11. សូងសិទ្ធិបញ្ជាក់នូវថ្ងៃរួចមក កូនកោសុន។
    If you look at both sides of the river, you will see lights in fishing boats.

12. សូងសិទ្ធិបញ្ជាក់នូវថ្ងៃរួចមក កូនកោសុន។
    If you look at both sides of the river, you won't see anything.

Drill I. Transformation

MODEL: ចែក ប្រឹក្សាំបែកក៏ដូចគ្នា ដោយមកតែមុនពេលត្រូវ បំពេញ
   ពីម៉ូាងឃឹមការសិទ្ធិ បំពេញពេលជូនពីមុននេះ

   Teacher: If I see the light red color, I know it's near dawn already.

   Student: The light red color indicates that it's close to dawn already.

1. រេះសេងប៉ុលីនិ គំុតីថ្មី
   នៅផ្លូវដែល

   Teacher: If I see the light red color, I know it's near dawn already.

   Student: The light red color indicates that it's close to dawn already.

2. រេះសេងប៉ុលីនិ គំុតីថ្មី
   នៅផ្លូវដែល

   Teacher: If I see the light red color, I know it's near dawn already.

   Student: The light red color indicates that it's close to dawn already.

3. រេះសេងប៉ុលីនិ គំុតីថ្មី
   នៅផ្លូវដែល

   Teacher: If I see the light red color, I know it's near dawn already.

   Student: The light red color indicates that it's close to dawn already.
Drill J. Transformation

**MODEL:** តូច សាកល់ដៅកុំព្យូទ័រ ប្រការស្តើងឈ្មោះចេញចូល

**Teacher:** The light red color indicates that it's close to dawn already.

**Student:** If I see the light red color, I know it's near dawn already.

1. ប្រសិនបើអ្នកសន្យាចាប់ពីក្រុងថ្មីជាច្រើន

2. ត្រូវបានការពារស្តើងឈ្មោះចេញចូល

3. ប្រសិនបើអ្នកបានចុះដឹកនិទ្ធ

4. ត្រូវបានការពារស្តើងឈ្មោះចេញចូល

5. ប្រសិនបើអ្នកបានចុះដឹកនិទ្ធ

6. ត្រូវបានការពារស្តើងឈ្មោះចេញចូល
UNIT 63

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. តើអ្វីទេនេះបាន?  

Pon

What's that whistle?

2. អ្នកទាំងអស់បានមិនមិនអស់រួមទេ  

Sok

The boat blows the whistle to tell the travellers that it's about to arrive at a stop, and that they must get ready.

3. ប្រាកដបានទេ?  

Pon

We've arrived in Kompong Cham already. That's very fast.

4. មិនអាចមានគំនិតមិនអាចមានយោបលុង  

Sok

It's not Kompong Cham. This is a small stop; we haven't arrived in Kompong Cham yet. Look, the boat is coming into the docks.

5. អ្នកមកដល់ណាមក?  

Pon

What are they selling on the dock?

6. អ្នកមកដល់ណាមក?  

Sok

Oh, they're selling cakes, food, and fruit too. The boat leaves one dock and goes to another.

7. ខ្លះបានជាកើតដល់ណាមក?  

Pon

Do they sell food on every dock?

8. ខ្លះបានជាកើតដល់ណាមក?  

Sok

They do. And there are people getting off and on at each dock.

9. ខ្លះបានជាកើតដល់ណាមក?  

Pon

I find the landscape along the river in the morning very pretty.

10. ខ្លះបានជាកើតដល់ណាមក?  

Sok

Yes, the houses of the peasants are all surrounded by trees. Mango and orange, for example.
Now the sun is getting hotter little by little.

It's almost one o'clock. We're getting close to Kompong Cham. The boat still only has to go to the docks at Tonle Bat.

If you look from Tonle Bat do you see Kompong Cham?

Yes, you can see clearly, and it's pretty too. The boat will cross to the north bank and enter and stop at the dock of Kompong Cham in about thirty minutes more; then we will have arrived.

This is a very pleasant trip, and it's interesting too.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1.  ក្រាហ្ស៊ីក្រុងគឺមិនដោះស្រាយការបញ្ជាក់ក្នុងអាយុមួយដូចគ្នានេះ
   ឈុតូចឬមិនឈុតូចឬ

2.  ក្រាឡ្មីត្រូវបានបញ្ជាក់អំពីសម្រាប់សល់
   ពីពេលមួយដូចគ្នានេះ

3.  ក្រាឡ្មីត្រូវបានបញ្ជាក់អំពីសម្រាប់សល់
   ពីពេលមួយដូចគ្នានេះ

4.  ប្រើប្រាស់ពន្យល់ដោយសម្រាប់សល់
   ពីពេលមួយដូចគ្នានេះ

5.  ប្រើប្រាស់ពន្យល់ដោយសម្រាប់សល់
   ពីពេលមួយដូចគ្នានេះ

6.  ប្រើប្រាស់ពន្យល់ដោយសម្រាប់សល់
   ពីពេលមួយដូចគ្នានេះ

7.  ប្រើប្រាស់ពន្យល់ដោយសម្រាប់សល់
   ពីពេលមួយដូចគ្នានេះ

8.  ប្រើប្រាស់ពន្យល់ដោយសម្រាប់សល់
   ពីពេលមួយដូចគ្នានេះ

9.  ប្រើប្រាស់ពន្យល់ដោយសម្រាប់សល់
   ពីពេលមួយដូចគ្នានេះ

10.  ប្រើប្រាស់ពន្យល់ដោយសម្រាប់សល់
    ពីពេលមួយដូចគ្នានេះ

Drill B. Response

MODEL:  ដើម្បីសិក្សាមានបេស្គាល់
      (រូបឈឺឆ្លងបំព្រូមូសុះ)
      សម្រាប់អ្នកទើបមេត្តួយ
      ក្នុងការស្វែងរក

Teacher:  We've arrived in Kompong Cham.
          (small landing)

Student:  This is a little landing; we haven't
          arrived in Kompong Cham yet.

1.  ដើម្បីសិក្សាមានបេស្គាល់
    (រូបឈឺឆ្លងបំព្រូមូសុះ)
2. ដើរជើងរបស់បង? (គេបង់ជើង)
3. ដើរកណ៍ជើងទឹក? (គេក់ជើង)
4. ដើរកណ៍កំបូង? (គេមកកំបូង)
5. ដើរកណ៍ផ្សាទូលរ? (គេក់ផ្សាទូលរ)

Drill C. Double Substitution

1. ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់បង គេបង់ជើងដើរប្រាំ
2. គេបង់ជើងដើររបស់ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់បង
3. ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់បង គេបង់ជើងដើររបស់ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់បង
4. គេបង់ជើងដើររបស់ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់បង គេបង់ជើងដើររបស់ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់បង
5. គេបង់ជើងដើររបស់ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់បង គេបង់ជើងដើររបស់ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់បង
6. គេបង់ជើងដើររបស់ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់បង គេបង់ជើងដើររបស់ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់បង
7. គេបង់ជើងដើររបស់ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់បង គេបង់ជើងដើររបស់ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់បង
8. គេបង់ជើងដើររបស់ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់បង គេបង់ជើងដើររបស់ក្លាអ់ម៉ាស់់ជើងរបស់បង
d
Drill D. Response

MODEL: បែនែ: ជាការបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សាបែនែ (ដែលមានជួងឈឺ) គឺជារឿនមួយ មានការបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សាបែនែ ដែលមានជួងឈឺ បែនែ

Teacher: Do they sell food at every dock? (people get off and on)

Student: Yes. And there are people getting off and on at every dock.
The houses of peasants are all surrounded by trees. 

Small villages are all surrounded by gardens. 

The houses of government officials are all surrounded by walls. 

Motas and temples are all surrounded by soldiers.

1. The school is surrounded by the temple. 
2. The government official's home is surrounded by the army. 
3. The small village is surrounded by the government official's home. 
4. Your school is surrounded by the temple. 
5. The houses of government officials are all surrounded by soldiers. 

The houses of peasants are all surrounded by trees.
Drill F. **Equivalence drill**

**MODEL:** ព្រែក សម្ដេចព្រេងនៃសិល្បក់ សម្របស់ព្រះកាយ សម្របស់ប្រការ សម្របស់ព្រះកាយ សម្របស់ប្រការ

1. ព្រែកសំរាប់ព្រះកាយសម្របស់សិល្បក់
2. ព្រែកសំរាប់ព្រះកាយសម្របស់សិល្បក់
3. នូវសំរាប់ព្រះកាយសម្របស់សិល្បក់
4. ព្រែកសំរាប់ព្រះកាយសម្របស់សិល្បក់
5. ព្រែកសំរាប់ព្រះកាយសម្របស់សិល្បក់

**Teacher:** There are trees around all the houses of the peasants.

**Student:** The houses of the peasants are all surrounded by trees.

Drill G. **Substitution**

1. បុជ្រេដ៏ស្រីរងស៊ីក្រុង នៃការពារៈ ឬការពារៈ
2. បុជ្រេដ៏ស្រីរងស៊ីក្រុង នៃការពារៈ ឬការពារៈ
3. បុជ្រេដ៏ស្រីរងស៊ីក្រុង នៃការពារៈ ឬការពារៈ
4. បុជ្រេដ៏ស្រីរងស៊ីក្រុង នៃការពារៈ ឬការពារៈ
5. បុជ្រេដ៏ស្រីរងស៊ីក្រុង នៃការពារៈ ឬការពារៈ
6. បុជ្រេដ៏ស្រីរងស៊ីក្រុង នៃការពារៈ ឬការពារៈ
7. បុជ្រេដ៏ស្រីរងស៊ីក្រុង នៃការពារៈ ឬការពារៈ
8. បុជ្រេដ៏ស្រីរងស៊ីក្រុង នៃការពារៈ ឬការពារៈ
9. បុជ្រេដ៏ស្រីរងស៊ីក្រុង នៃការពារៈ ឬការពារៈ

**The boat still will enter only one more dock.**

**The boat still will enter only one more stop (landing).**

**The bus still will enter only one more stop.**

**The bus still will enter only one more small village.**

**The train still will enter only one more small village.**

**The train still will enter only Kompong Chang station.**

**The bus still will enter only Kompong Chang station.**

**The bus still will enter only Tonle Bat dock.**

**The boat still will enter only Tonle Bat dock.**
Drill H. Transformation

MODEL: យើងនឹងចុះនៅក្នុងក្រុងវ៉ាន់ម៉ាត់ ដែលយើងចូលគ្នាដោយរថយន្ត

Teacher: The ship will enter only one more dock, at Tonle Bat.

Student: Besides the Tonle Bat dock, the ship won't go to any other dock.

Drill I. Response

MODEL: មានអ្វើបអំពីការដំណើរការនេះទេ? (អ្វើលទេបការសម្រាប់មនុស្ស) ខ្ញុំមានអ្វើបអំពីការដំណើរការនេះទេ (អ្វើលទេបការសម្រាប់មនុស្ស)

Teacher: What kind of trip is this? (happy, interesting)

Student: This is a very happy trip, and interesting also.
Drill J. Substitution

1. នូវថ្ងៃជាមួយស្តេចញេតិការពារ បង្កើតឱ្យបំផ្លាញ ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍។
   Now the sun is warming up little by little every minute.

2. ថ្ងៃចំណាស់នេះស្តេចញេតិការពារ បង្កើតឱ្យបំផ្លាញ ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍។
   Now the sun is getting bright little by little every minute.

3. ថ្ងៃចំណាស់នេះស្តេចញេតិការពារ បង្កើតឱ្យបំផ្លាញ ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍។
   Now the sun is getting bright little by little every minute.

4. ថ្ងៃចំណាស់នេះស្តេចញេតិការពារ បង្កើតឱ្យបំផ្លាញ ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍។
   Now the lamp is getting bright little by little every moment.

5. ថ្ងៃចំណាស់នេះស្តេចញេតិការពារ បង្កើតឱ្យបំផ្លាញ ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍។
   Now the lamp is warming up little by little every moment.

6. ថ្ងៃចំណាស់នេះស្តេចញេតិការពារ បង្កើតឱ្យបំផ្លាញ ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍។
   Now the lamp is warming up little by little every minute.

7. ថ្ងៃចំណាស់នេះស្តេចញេតិការពារ បង្កើតឱ្យបំផ្លាញ ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍។
   Now the sun is warming up little by little every minute.
UNIT 64

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. Pon

How come all the stores and offices are closed today?

2. Sok

Today is Bon Phcum, didn't you know?

3. Pon

I thought Bon Phcum was last month. How do they celebrate it?

4. Sok

On Phcum day, the people, men and women, young and old go to the wat.

5. They have a memorial service for the dead.

6. Pon

How many days do they celebrate this holiday?

7. Sok

Phcum is just one day, that is, the fifteenth day of the waning moon of the month of Phutebot.

8. Pon

Is Phcum more important than New Year's?

9. Sok

Both holidays are equally important.

10. Pon

Does Cambodian New Year's coincide with Chinese New Year's, or is it January 1st?

11. Sok

Cambodian New Year's does not coincide with Chinese New Year's, and it isn't on January 1st.
12. ដូច្នេះពួកគេបានរត់ខាងមុខ?

13. តើប្រភេទប្រចាំឆ្នាំដែលកម្ពុជាមិនធ្វើឲ្យមានទេ?

14. វៀតណាមេដែលប្រារព្យាក្រឹតឱ្យវៀតណាមេ ក្លឹប បែកពង្រីក បែកពង្រីកជាច្រើនធំ

15. ដែលប្រារព្យាក្រឹតឱ្យវៀតណាមេ ក្លឹប?

16. ខ្មែរ ប្រារព្យាក្រឹតឱ្យវៀតណាមេ ក្លឹប បែកពង្រីកជាច្រើនធំ, ក្លឹប បែកពង្រីកជាច្រើនធំ ក្លឹប ក្លឹបជាច្រើនធំ ក្លឹប ក្លឹបជាច្រើនធំ,

17. ការប្រារព្យាក្រឹតឱ្យវៀតណាមេ ក្លឹប ក្លឹបជាច្រើនធំ ក្លឹប ក្លឹបជាច្រើនធំ ក្លឹប?

18. ប្រារព្យាក្រឹតឱ្យសម្រាប់ការគ្រែងធ្លាក់ ឬបំក្លីរអាច្នេត្ត់ណាមេ ដោយមានការប្រារព្យាក្រឹតឱ្យសម្រាប់ការគ្រែងធ្លាក់ ឬបំក្លីរអាច្នេត្ត់ណាមេ

19. ការគ្រែងធ្លាក់ដោយមានការប្រារព្យាក្រឹតឱ្យសម្រាប់ការគ្រែងធ្លាក់ ឬបំក្លីរអាច្នេត្ត់ណាមេ ដោយមានការប្រារព្យាក្រឹតឱ្យសម្រាប់ការគ្រែងធ្លាក់ ឬបំក្លីរអាច្នេត្ត់ណាមេ

20. ការប្រារព្យាក្រឹតឱ្យសម្រាប់ការគ្រែងធ្លាក់ ឬបំក្លីរអាច្នេត្ត់ណាមេ?

21. ឬពួកគេប្រារព្យាក្រឹតឱ្យសម្រាប់ការគ្រែងធ្លាក់ ឬបំក្លីរអាច្នេត្ត់ណាមេ ប្រារព្យាក្រឹតឱ្យសម្រាប់ការគ្រែងធ្លាក់ ឬបំក្លីរអាច្នេត្ត់ណាមេ?

It's the 13th of April.

Every year are there other holidays that the Cambodians celebrate?

Yes, there are other holidays, like Kathin, the Water Festival, and Tang Tok for example.

How about holidays that don't occur every year. Do they have them?

Yes, for example the coronation, marriage, cremations, and special occasions when they usually take off from work.

When chiefs of state from other countries come to visit Cambodia, do they usually take off from work?

Yes, usually they take off in order to greet the honored guests of the country.

When the Chief of State of Cambodia goes abroad, or returns, I see a lot of people along the street.

Is that occasion also a holiday?

Yes, on that occasion they take off from work also in order to accompany or greet the chief of state who has returned to the country.
DRILLS

Drill A. Response

MODEL: សូឈឺសុំស្រីរមសេសថ្មីណា? ។ បានសុំស្រីរមសេសឆ្នាំថ្មីណា បានសុំស្រីរមសេសឆ្នាំថ្មីណាខ្លាំង ត្រូវបានកើតឡើង។

Teacher: Why did they stop work? (to greet the honored guests)

Student: They stopped work in order to greet the honored guests.

1. បានសុំស្រីរមសេសឆ្នាំថ្មីណាខ្លាំង? ។

2. បានសុំស្រីរមសេសឆ្នាំថ្មីណាខ្លាំង? ។

3. បានសុំស្រីរមសេសឆ្នាំថ្មីណាខ្លាំង? ។

Drill B. Response

MODEL: បឹង: បឹងឯក្តីជាងស្តេចថ្មីណា? ។

Teacher: Is Phcum Ben more important than New Years? (the same)

Student: Both these holidays are of the same importance.

1. បឹងឯក្តីជាងស្តេចថ្មីណា? ។

2. បឹងឯក្តីជាងស្តេចថ្មីណា? ។

3. បឹងឯក្តីជាងស្តេចថ្មីណា? ។

4. បឹងឯក្តីជាងស្តេចថ្មីណា? ។
Drill C. Response

**Teacher:** Does Cambodian New Year fall on Chinese New Year, or is it on the first of January?

**Student:** Cambodian New Year doesn't fall on Chinese New Year, nor is it on the first of January.
Drill D. Transformation

MODEL:  
Teacher: When the head of state returns to the country, they go out to greet him.

Student: They go out to greet the head of state who has returned to the country.

Drill E. Expansion

1.  
2.  
3.  
4.  
5.  

I see many people.
When the head of state goes abroad, I see many people along the street.
When the head of state goes abroad or returns, I see many people along the street.
Drill F. Reduction

1. ចាន់តែបើស្រុក និង ឡើងបី
   ក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង មកបី និង នៅក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង
   មក និង នៅក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង

2. ចាន់តែបើស្រុក និង ឡើងបី
   ក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង មក និង នៅក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង
   មក និង នៅក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង

3. ចាន់តែបើស្រុក និង ឡើងបី
   ក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង មក និង នៅក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង
   មក និង នៅក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង

4. ចាន់តែបើស្រុក និង ឡើងបី
   ក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង មក និង នៅក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង
   មក និង នៅក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង

5. ចាន់តែបើស្រុក និង ឡើងបី
   ក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង មក និង នៅក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង
   មក និង នៅក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់យើង

When the head of state of Cambodia goes abroad or returns, I see many people along the street.

When the head of state goes abroad or returns, I see many people along the street.

When the head of state goes abroad, I see many people along the street.

I see many people along the street.

I see many people.
UNIT 65

NARRATION

1. They are thinking about making a trip to Kompong Cham.

2. Pon hasn't yet had the chance to see Kompong Cham.

3. He asks Sok about the overall appearance of the city.

4. Sok says Kompong Cham is a clean and modern city which is on the banks of the Mekong.

5. Pon and Sok want to go to Kompong Cham by boat, of which there are many going and coming each day. (going round trip)

6. Travelling on boats is a little slow because they stop at many places.

7. Travellers cannot buy tickets in advance. Only when the boat leaves can they buy tickets.

8. The ticket from Phnom Penh to Kompong Cham is not very expensive, maybe only 25 riels.

9. They want to go by the boat that leaves in the morning so that it will be a little cooler.

10. Therefore they have to arrive at the boat dock an hour or a half hour before the boat leaves.
1. Now they have arrived at the dock, and they go on the boat together.

2. Pon sees many travellers. Some are going on the boat with things in their hands; others are buying various things.

3. Sok tells Pon that some people buy things to sell; others buy food to take to the children at home.

4. A little later they hear the sound of the whistle.

5. Sok says that the boat blows the whistle as a signal that it is time for the boat to leave.

6. The boatmen are untying the ropes and the chains; as for the travellers, they sit quietly waiting for the ticket seller.

7. They sell tickets according to the distance.

8. If you look from the ship on both sides of the river, you don't see anything - it's very dark.

9. From time to time they see the flickering lights of the fishing boats along the bank.

10. After a moment they see a reddish color in the east - it's a sign that it's dawn.
1. បើសុី saO

2. សុីs

3. សុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីs

4. សុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីs

5. សុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីសុីs

6. សុីសុីសុីសុីសុីs

7. សុីសុីs

8. សុីs

9. សុីs

10. សុីs

11. សុីs

1. Pon hears the whistle of the boat again, and he thinks that they have arrived in Kompong Cham already.

2. Sok says that this is a signal to tell the travellers that they are about to arrive at a landing, and that they must get their things in order.

3. This landing is not Kompong Cham; it's a small landing along the way.

4. Now the ship is preparing to enter the dock.

5. On the dock they sell cakes, food and various fruits.

6. The boat leaves one dock and enters another; and at each dock there are always people getting off and on.

7. The landscape in the morning along the river is very pretty.

8. They see houses of the country people hidden in the shade of many trees: mango, citrus, and banana for example.

9. The sun is getting hotter and little by little because it's afternoon already.

10. The boat has arrived near Kompong Cham, and Pon can see the city clearly from the distance.

11. This is a very pleasant trip for Pon, and interesting, too.
1. Pon sees that all the stores and offices are closed, but he doesn't know what holiday it is.

2. Sok says: Today is Phcum Ben.

3. Pon thought that Phcum Ben was last month and asks Sok:

4. "On this holiday do they go to the wat to have memorial services for the dead?"

5. "They celebrate this holiday only one day, that is, every 15th day of the waning moon of the month of Phutebot."

6. Sok tells Pon that the Phcum Ben and New Year are equally important.

7. But the Cambodian New Year does not coincide with Chinese New Year nor is it on the first of January. It is on the 13th of April.

8. Cambodians celebrate other holidays such as Kathin, the Water Festival, and Tang Tok, for example.

9. Some other holidays do not occur every year; they are special occasions when people must stop work such as the coronations, weddings, cremations, and the times when foreign chiefs of state come to visit Cambodia.

10. Government officials and some students can stop work for two or three hours in order to go greet the honored guests of the country.
UNIT 66

BASIC DIALOGUE

Layman

1. ដែលប្រឈមប្រឹកមានជាញាដែល
   បានសិក្សាដ៏យូរសម្រាប់ខ្ពស់?  Hello. How are you?

Monk

2. ខ្ញុំមាន មើលមុនយូរ
   មិនមាន ។ I'm well.

Layman

3. ខោរបស់អ្នក នៅក្នុងម៉ូញា
   ប៉ូតិ៍? Where are you going?

Monk

4. ខ្ញុំនឹងទិញសំណាង។ I'm going to school.

Layman

5. តើអ្នកមានសំណាងណាស់
   ណាស់? Where is your school?

Monk

6. មានសណ្ឋានក្នុងសំណាង៖ ណាស់
   នៅក្នុងប្រាសាទ? My school is near the palace.
   ឬប្រាសាទណាហ្មរឈមឫស? It's called the Suramart
   Buddhist Institute.

Layman

7. តើសិស្សធ្វើដៃមកមាន
   យូរក្រោយ? How many years have you studied
   អ្វើក? already?

Monk

8. ខ្ញុំធ្វើដៃដ៏យូរក្រោយ
   នៅថ្ងៃនេះ។ ក្រោយពេលឆ្នាំ។ I've studied two years. This year
   ខ្ញុំនៅក្នុងប្រាសាទ? I'm in the third class.

Layman

9. តើសិស្សធ្វើប្រការណាក់លើ
   មុន? How many hours a day do you study?

Monk

10. ខ្ញុំធ្វើប្រការណ៍ដ៏យូរ
    មុនក្នុងពាក្យមុខ, ប្រការណ៍ដ៏យូរ
    លើក្នុងពាក្យមុខ។ I study five hours a day; two hours
    នៅជាមួយ, ហិរញ្ញវត្ថុនៅឯក្រិច. in the morning, three in the
    អាកាស. afternoon.
(BASIC DIALOGUE
in lay language)

1. ឈប់បង្កើត ពីរាជក្អែរីយារ ឈ្មោះ?

Pon  Hello. How are you?

Sok  I'm well.

2. សូម សុភាពយន្តនឹងបង្កើត

Pon  Where are you going?

Sok  I'm going to school.

3. និយាយរឿងថ្មីមួយ សេចក្តីពីតាមរយៈឈ្មោះ?

Sok  My school is near the palace. It's called the Suramarit Buddhist Institute.

4. សូម សុភាពយន្តពីយោងក្នុងការវត្តុតិត

Pon  How many years have you studied already?

Sok  I've studied two years. This year I'm in the third class.

5. តើអ្នកមានបន្ថែមប៉ុន្មាន?

Pon  How many hours a day do you study?

Sok  I study five hours a day: two hours in the morning, three in the afternoon.
DRILLS

Drill A. Transformation

MODEL: សូមៗ ប្រការពួកីស ។
        (ដំណើរគោរព)
        ខ្ញុំបាន សូមៗ។ សូមៗ ។

1. សូមៗ ប្រការពួកីស ។
   ខ្ញុំបាន សូមៗ។
   ខ្ញុំបាន សូមៗ。
2. សូមៗ ប្រការពួកីស ។
   ខ្ញុំបាន សូមៗ។
   ខ្ញុំបាន សូមៗ。
3. សូមៗ ប្រការពួកីស ។
   ខ្ញុំបាន សូមៗ។
   ខ្ញុំបាន សូមៗ。
4. សូមៗ ប្រការពួកីស ។
   ខ្ញុំបាន សូមៗ។
   ខ្ញុំបាន សូមៗ。
5. សូមៗ ប្រការពួកីស ។
   ខ្ញុំបាន សូមៗ។
   ខ្ញុំបាន សូមៗ。

Teacher: Hello, sir. (Hello)
Student: Hello, monk.

Drill B. Transformation

MODEL: កុីៗ គឺ សុំម៉ាហែលុងសុំៗ ។
        (ឈឺធូរោត្តូ)
        ខ្ញុំមាន កុីៗ ។

1. កុីៗ គឺ សុំម៉ាហែលុងសុំៗ ។
   ខ្ញុំមាន កុីៗ ។
   ខ្ញុំមាន កុីៗ ។
2. កុីៗ គឺ សុំម៉ាហែលុងសុំៗ ។
   ខ្ញុំមាន កុីៗ ។
   ខ្ញុំមាន កុីៗ ។
3. កុីៗ គឺ សុំម៉ាហែលុងសុំៗ ។
   ខ្ញុំមាន កុីៗ ។
   ខ្ញុំមាន កុីៗ ។
4. កុីៗ គឺ សុំម៉ាហែលុងសុំៗ ។
   ខ្ញុំមាន កុីៗ ។
   ខ្ញុំមាន កុីៗ ។
5. កុីៗ គឺ សុំម៉ាហែលុងសុំៗ ។
   ខ្ញុំមាន កុីៗ ។
   ខ្ញុំមាន កុីៗ ។

Teacher: Yes, I'm well. (Yes, I)
Student: Yes, I'm well.
Drill C. Transformation

MODEL: ព្រឹដ្យាម្ចាស់ កំប្លែងកីឡាវាយម្ហូបា និងកីឡាធូតកា ។
1. ស្វែងរកឈ្មោះក្រោមតែកន្លែង។
2. ព្រឹដ្យាម្ចាស់កីឡាវាយម្ហូបា ។
3. ស្វែងរកឈ្មោះក្រោមតែកន្លែង។
4. ព្រឹដ្យាម្ចាស់កីឡាធូតកា ។
5. ស្វែងរកឈ្មោះក្រោមតែកន្លែង។

Teacher: Hello.
Student: Hello.

Drill D. Transformation

MODEL: បែុន បឺរបឺរកម្រុងក្រុង។
1. បឺរបឺរកម្រុងក្រុង។
2. បឺរបឺរកម្រុងក្រុង។
3. បឺរបឺរកម្រុងក្រុង។
4. បឺរបឺរកម្រុងក្រុង។
5. បឺរបឺរកម្រុងក្រុង។
6. បឺរបឺរកម្រុងក្រុង។

Teacher: I'm well.
Student: I'm well.

Drill E. Response (answer as a monk)

MODEL: បឺរបឺរកម្រុងក្រុង។ បឺរបឺរកម្រុងក្រុង។
1. បឺរបឺរកម្រុងក្រុង។
2. បឺរបឺរកម្រុងក្រុង។

Teacher: How many years have you studied? (two)
Student: I've studied two years already.

150
Drill F. Questioning

MODEL: គេ: ខ្ញុំ តើអ្នកឆ្នាំបំពេញបំផុតមានប៉ុន្តែប៉ុន្តែ? ខ្ញុំ: ឆ្នាំបំផុតមានប៉ុន្តែ ១ឆ្នាំ

Teacher: I've studied two years already. (how many?)

Student: How many years have you studied?

Drill G. Substitution

1. កន្លែងណាដែលអ្នកជួរ? Where are you (a monk) going?
2. កន្លែងណាកែវបុរី? Are you going to school?
3. កន្លែងណាកែវបុរីនៅផ្ទៃក្នុង? Are you going to my house?
4. កន្លែងណាកែវបុរីនៅក្នុងវិថី? Are you (a layman) going to my house?
5. កន្លែងណាកែវបុរីនៅមាន់? Are you going to school?
6. សម្រាប់បំផុតតំណាងប្រយោជន៍អ្នកបាន?  
7. សម្រាប់បំផុតតំណាងប្រយោជន៍អ្នកបាន?  
8. សម្រាប់បំផុតតំណាងប្រយោជន៍អ្នកបាន?  

Where are you going?  
Where are you (a woman) going?  
Where are you (a monk) going?  

Drill H. Substitution  

1. អ្នកសុខសំរាប់  
2. អ្នកសុខសំរាប់  
3. អ្នកសុខសំរាប់  
4. អ្នកសុខសំរាប់  
5. អ្នកសុខសំរាប់  
6. អ្នកសុខសំរាប់  
7. អ្នកសុខសំរាប់  
8. អ្នកសុខសំរាប់  
9. អ្នកសុខសំរាប់  

I (a monk) am well as usual.  
My wife is well as usual.  
My wife is well.  
I (a monk) am well.  
I am well as usual.  
My father is well as usual.  
My father is well.  
I (a monk) am well.  
I (a monk) am well as usual.
UNIT 67

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. យោប្្យ៉ា កំុងរៀងរាល់បញ្ហារបស់ ខ្លួនឯង?  
Layman  
What subjects do they teach there?

2. យោប្្យ៉ា កំុងរៀងរាល់បញ្ហារបស់ ខ្លួនឯង?  
Monk  
They teach all subjects, as in: other lycées, and in that school they teach Pali and Sanskrit and religion too.

3. ប្រុសប្រុស កំុងរៀងរាល់បញ្ហារបស់ ខ្លួនឯង?  
Layman  
Do they also teach foreign languages like French and English?

4. ប្រុសប្រុស កំុងរៀងរាល់បញ្ហារបស់ ខ្លួនឯង?  
Monk  
Yes, these days they teach English and French.

5. អើយមានការប្រុសប្រុស កំុងរៀងរាល់បញ្ហារបស់ ខ្លួនឯង?  
Layman  
You can speak English, can't you?

6. អើយមានការប្រុសប្រុស កំុងរៀងរាល់បញ្ហារបស់ ខ្លួនឯង?  
Monk  
I can speak some, but I don't know too many words.

7. រៀងរាល់បញ្ហារន្ទន់?  
Layman  
In which wat do you live?

8. វាយការពេញឈ្នះ?  
Monk  
I live in Wat Unalom.

9. ប្រុសប្រុស កំុងរៀងរាល់បញ្ហារបស់ ខ្លួនឯង?  
Layman  
There are a lot of monks in that wat, aren't there?

10. ច្រៀងប្្យ៉ា កំុងរៀងរាល់បញ្ហារបស់ ខ្លួនឯង?  
Monk  
There are a lot, but I don't know how many for sure.
11.  Do all the monks go to study at the Buddhist Institute only?

12.  No, in that wat there is a Buddhist elementary school; some monks study in that school, some others go to study at the Buddhist Institute.
(BASIC DIALOGUE
in lay language)

1. ពែតអាស្រ័យជាតិណាអ្វីទេ?

2. ពែតអាស្រ័យជាតិណាអ្វីទេ ដែលខ្ញុំប្រឈមប្រាស់មកចូលប្រជាជនិកសម្រាប់មកចូលប្រជាជនិកសម្រាប់អាស្រ័យជាតិទាំងអស់?

3. ពែតអាស្រ័យជាតិណាអ្វីទេ ដែលខ្ញុំប្រឈមប្រាស់មកចូលប្រជាជនិកសម្រាប់អាស្រ័យជាតិទាំងអស់?

4. ខ្ញុំប្រឈមប្រាស់មកចូលប្រជាជនិកសម្រាប់អាស្រ័យជាតិទាំងអស់

5. អាក្រក់នេះអាចប្រឈមប្រាស់ៗជាច្រើន៖ គឺមុនឬទេ?

6. ខ្ញុំប្រឈមប្រាស់ប្រភេទពីក្នុងទំនុកទៅដល់ទំនុកអាចជួយយើងណាមួយ?

7. ប្រភេទនេះឆ្លងកាត់សម្រាប់អ្វី?

8. ខ្ញុំប្រឈមប្រាស់ជាច្រើន៖ គឺមុនឬទេ?

9. មានអារម្មណ៍ចាស់មកចូលប្រជាជនិកសម្រាប់អាស្រ័យជាតិទាំងអស់

What subjects do they teach there?

They teach all subjects, as in other lycées, and in that school they teach Pali and Sanskrit and religion too.

Do they also teach foreign languages like French and English?

Yes, these days they teach English and French.

You can speak English, can't you?

I can speak some, but I don't know too many words.

In which wat do you live?

I live in Wat Unalom.

There are a lot of monks in that wat, aren't there?
10. Sok

There are a lot, but I don't know how many for sure.

11. Pon

Do all the monks go to study at the Buddhist Institute only?

12. Sok

No, in that wat there is a Buddhist elementary school; some monks study in that school, some others go to study at the Buddhist Institute.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1.  They study all subjects in that lycée.
   ៖ ព្រះបាទលេខីនីយច្រើនប្រជែង
      ក្នុងសាលារៀននេះ?

2.  They study Pali and Sanskrit in that lycée.
   ព្រះបាទលេខីនីយច្រើនប្រជែង
      និងសាក្សាពីការេក្នុងសាលារៀននេះ?

3.  They study Pali and Sanskrit in that school.
   ព្រះបាទលេខីនីយច្រើនប្រជែង
      និងសាក្សាពីការេក្នុងសាលារៀននេះ?

4.  They study French and English in that school.
   ព្រះបាទលេខីនីយច្រើនប្រជែង
      និងសាក្សាពីការេក្នុងសាលារៀននេះ?

5.  The monks study French and English in that school.
   លាយកែលាយស្លុកព្រះបាទលេខីនីយច្រើន
      និងសាក្សាពីការេក្នុងសាលារៀននេះ?

6.  The monks study French and English in that lycée.
   លាយកែលាយស្លុកព្រះបាទលេខីនីយច្រើន
      និងសាក្សាពីការេក្នុងសាលារៀននេះ?

7.  The monks study all subjects in that lycée.
   លាយកែលាយស្លុកព្រះបាទលេខីនីយច្រើន
      នៅសាលារៀននេះ?

8.  They teach all subjects in that lycée.
   លាយកែលាយស្លុកព្រះបាទលេខីនីយច្រើន
      នៅសាលារៀននេះ?

Drill B. Substitution

1.  The monks can speak some English can't they?
   លាយកែលាយស្លុកព្រះបាទលេខីនីយច្រើន
      អាចរួមឈាមបានមិនបាន។

2.  The monks can speak some foreign languages can't they?
   លាយកែលាយស្លុកព្រះបាទលេខីនីយច្រើន
      អាចរួមឈាមបានមិនបាន។

3.  All the monks can speak some foreign languages can't they?
   អាចរួមឈាមបានមិនបាន។

4.  All the monks can speak some Pali can't they?
   អាចរួមឈាមបានមិនបាន។

5.  All the monks can read some Pali,
   អាចមួយមិនបាន។

157
6. ckt?  
can't they?

7. ckt?  
All the monks can read some Sanskrit, can't they?

8. ckt?  
The monks can read some English, can't they?

9. ckt?  
The monks can speak some English, can't they?

Drill C. Substitution

1.  
The monks (you) live in the Unnalom Pagoda, don't you?

2.  
All the monks live in the Unnalom Pagoda, don't they?

3.  
All the monks only go to study in the Unnalom Pagoda, don't they?

4.  
All the monks only go to study in the Buddhist Institute, don't they?

5.  
Some monks only go to study in the Buddhist Institute, don't they?

6.  
Some monks only go to study in the Buddhist elementary school, don't they?

7.  
Some monks live in Unnalom Pagoda, don't they?

8.  
The monks (you) live in Unnalom Pagoda, don't you?
Drill D. **Response**

**MODEL:** ខ្លៅ: ការស្វែងរកកុម្មុយន៍របស់អ្នក ក្នុងសាលារៀនមួយឡើយ (អាលុយ៉េរុបមួយ) ដែលជាមួយគ្នាក្នុងអ្នក។

1. ការស្វែងរកកុម្មុយន៍របស់អ្នក ក្នុងសាលារៀនមួយ ដែលគ្នាក្នុងអ្នក? (អាលុយ៉េរុបមួយ)
2. ការស្វែងរកកុម្មុយន៍របស់អ្នក? (ខ្លីបំផុត)
3. ការស្វែងរកកុម្មុយន៍របស់អ្នក? (សុយសេសស្ដុងមួយ)
4. ការស្វែងរកកុម្មុយន៍របស់អ្នក? (ពីព្រៃគំនិតស្ដី)
5. ការស្វែងរកកុម្មុយន៍របស់អ្នក? (អាលុយ៉េរុបមួយឡើយ)

**Teacher:** What languages do you study at that school? (English and French)

**Student:** I study English and French at that school.

Drill E. **Transformation**

**MODEL:** មិន: អ្នកស្តីបានរៀនបញ្ហាដ៏ធំមួយ? ។

1. អ្នកស្តីបានរៀនបញ្ហាដ៏ធំមួយ? ។
2. អ្នកស្តីបានរៀនបញ្ហាដ៏ធំមួយ? ។
3. អ្នកស្តីបានរៀនបញ្ហាដ៏ធំមួយ? ។
4. អ្នកស្តីបានរៀនបញ្ហាដ៏ធំមួយ? ។
5. អ្នកស្តីបានរៀនបញ្ហាដ៏ធំមួយ? ។

**Teacher:** You can speak English, can't you?

**Student:** You can speak English, can't you? (monk's language)
Drill F. Response

MODEL: ឬឬ: កូនេះអាចសិក្សានៅភ្នំពេញ (ការណែនាំ: នារីប្រុស)

Teacher: Do all the monks only study at the Buddhist Institute? (that school, Buddhist elementary school)

Student: No, some monks study in that school, and others study in the Buddhist elementary school.

1. កូនេះអាចសិក្សានៅប្រាសាទពោធិ៍? (ការណែនាំ: នារីប្រុស)

2. កូនេះអាចសិក្សានៅសាលារៀលរៀលបារាំង? (ការណែនាំ: ឬឬ)

3. កូនេះអាចសិក្សានៅសាលាអារម្មណ៍? (ការណែនាំ: ឬឬ)

4. កូនេះអាចសិក្សាវាយកីឡាម៉ាស៊ីន? (ការណែនាំ: នារីប្រុស)

5. កូនេះអាចសិក្សាលក់សណ្ដាប់ប្រាកាស់? (ការណែនាំ: នារីប្រុស)

Drill G. Response

MODEL: ឬឬ: ដើរហានិភៅកូនេះប្រាន់? (ពាក្យកំសាន្ត នារីប្រុស)

Teacher: Do you always teach foreign languages? (foreign languages, other subjects)

Student: Sometimes I teach foreign languages; sometimes I teach other subjects.

1. ដើរហានិភៅកូនេះប្រាន់? (ពាក្យកំសាន្ត នារីប្រុស)
Drill H. Transformation

MODEL:

Teacher: The students study Cambodian every year.

Student: The students always study Cambodian every year.

Teacher: All the students study Cambodian.

Student: All the students study only Cambodian.
UNIT 68

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. បើអ្នកធ្វើតុលាការភ្នាក់ការមុនសប្តាហ៍។
   How many times do you eat in a day?

2. ម្យ៉ែនីអ្នកធ្វើតុលាការភ្នាក់ការមុនសប្តាហ៍
   Monks only eat two times a day; that is, in the morning and before noon. Monks don't have any food in the afternoon.

   ឬមិនឱ្យអ្នកធ្វើតុលាការភ្នាក់ការមុនសប្តាហ៍
   If you don't eat in the afternoon, aren't you tired?

   ឬម្យ៉ែនិឬត្រូវអ្នកធ្វើតុលាការភ្នាក់ការមុនសប្តាហ៍
   Not every day. If you are tired you can drink a beverage like tea, coffee, or orange juice, for example.

3. បើអ្នកធ្វើតុលាការភ្នាក់ការមុនសប្តាហ៍
   In every wat there is a chief monk's house behind the temple. Is he in?

   ម្យ៉ែនិឬកែតូចអោធនតុលាការភ្នាក់ការមុនសប្តាហ៍
   The chief monk and his deputy are praying at someone's house east of the wat. The monks and novices are praying in the temple. Tomorrow morning the people have invited the monks to come to beg alms. All the monks go to ask alms there. They offer them food to take to eat in the wat.
7. I would like to say goodbye.

I would like to say goodbye.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1.  ញូលរៀបការជីវិតជាច្រើនបំផុតហើយ?
   How many times a day do the monks eat?

2. កំណត់ដែល៖ ខ្មែរ ៖ កិច្ចពិភពធ្វើបានហើយ?
   How many times a day do the monks beg alms?

3. កំណត់ដែល៖ ខ្មែរ ៖ កិច្ចពិភពធ្វើបានហើយ?
   How many times a day do the monks enter the temple?

4. កំណត់ដែល៖ ខ្មែរ ៖ កិច្ចពិភពធ្វើបានហើយ?
   How many times a day do the monks go pray?

5. កំណត់ដែល៖ ខ្មែរ ៖ កិច្ចពិភពធ្វើបានហើយ?
   How many times a day do the monks study Pali?

6. កំណត់ដែល៖ ខ្មែរ ៖ កិច្ចពិភពធ្វើបានហើយ?
   How many times a day do the monks study Sanskrit?

7. កំណត់ដែល៖ ខ្មែរ ៖ កិច្ចពិភពធ្វើបានហើយ?
   How many times a day do the monks go to school?

8. កំណត់ដែល៖ ខ្មែរ ៖ កិច្ចពិភពធ្វើបានហើយ?
   How many times a day do the monks visit the chief monk’s quarters?

Drill B. Double Substitution

1. សម្រាប់ប្រជាជនការពារជីវិតនេះនឹងការណែត
   In each wat there is a chief monk.

2. សម្រាប់ប្រជាជនការពារជីវិតនេះនឹងការណែត
   In each hut there are two or three monks.

3. សម្រាប់ប្រជាជនការពារជីវិតនេះនឹងការណែត
   In each temple there are many images of Buddha.

4. សម្រាប់ប្រជាជនការពារជីវិតនេះនឹងការណែត
   In each village there are monks seeking alms.

5. សម្រាប់ប្រជាជនការពារជីវិតនេះនឹងការណែត
   Behind the temple is the chief monk’s house.

6. សម្រាប់ប្រជាជនការពារជីវិតនេះនឹងការណែត
   At the wat there is a teacher for the wat.

7. សម្រាប់ប្រជាជនការពារជីវិតនេះនឹងការណែត
   Inside the wat, there is an elementary school.
8.  ៖ គួតមានសិស្សាដ៏ស្រស់ស្អាត់ដោយស្រស់ស្អាត់ ។ ។
   កុម្មុយ្ត ។

In the class there are several monks who know how to speak English.

Drill C. Double Substitution

1. ពេញប្រសួលចូលថ្ងៃម៉ូលូម៉ូ ។ ។
   ឬ អាចគួរទេ?

If they don't eat in the evening aren't they tired?

2. ពេញប្រសួលចូលថ្ងៃម៉ូលូម៉ូ ។ ។
   ក្នុងសាលាអាិ៍រ ។ ។

If they don't go study, can't they take the exam?

3. ពេញប្រសួលចូលថ្ងៃម៉ូលូម៉ូ ។ ។
   សេះពេញប្រសួលចូលថ្ងៃម៉ូលូម៉ូ ។ ។

If they don't know Pali, isn't it hard to learn prayers?

4. ពេញប្រសួលចូលថ្ងៃម៉ូលូម៉ូ ។ ។
   ។ ។

If they don't go begging, don't they have someone go get food?

5. ពេញប្រសួលចូលថ្ងៃម៉ូលូម៉ូ ។ ។
   ។ ។

If they don't go preach, can't they meet them?

6. ពេញប្រសួលចូលថ្ងៃម៉ូលូម៉ូ ។ ។
   ។ ។

If they don't study to pray, don't they know how to pray?

7. ពេញប្រសួលចូលថ្ងៃម៉ូលូម៉ូ ។ ។
   ។ ។

If they have never preached, don't they think it's hard?

Drill D. Response

MODEL: យើងមានសិស្សាបី ។
   ឆ្នាំមិនសិក្សាបាល់ទេ?(ក្រម្មុយ្ត) ។

Teacher: How many times a day can a monk eat? (only two times)

Student: A monk can eat only two times a day.

1. យើងមានសិស្សែបី ។ ។ ។
   ឆ្នាំមិនសិក្សាបាល់ទេ?(ក្រម្មុយ្ត) ។

2. យើងមានសិស្សែបី ។ ។ ។
   ឆ្នាំមិនសិក្សាបាល់ទេ?(ក្រម្មុយ្ត) ។

3. យើងមានសិស្សែបី ។ ។ ។
   ឆ្នាំមិនសិក្សាបាល់ទេ?(ក្រម្មុយ្ត) ។

Teacher: ដំបូងបង្ហាញរូបភាពភ្លឺព្រ័ព្ទថ្ងៃម៉ូលូម៉ូ ។
   មានចំនួនពីបំបែក់ម៉ូលូម៉ូ ។

Student: The number of monks is divided by two. ។ ។

Teacher: ការសិក្សាប្រឹក្សាប្រឹក្សាបី ។ ។ ។
   ដំបូងបង្ហាញរូបភាពថ្ងៃម៉ូលូម៉ូ ។

Student: The number of prayers is divided by two. ។ ។ ។
Drill E. Response

MODEL: តើ: បើប្រាកដបើប្រាកដ មានបានក្នុងប្រាកដឱ្យបើប្រាកដ?  (ពិតដែលមាន)

Teacher: Do you know in which house the chief monk lives? (behind the temple)

Student: Yes, the chief monk lives in a house behind the temple.
Drill F. Transformation

MODEL: ប្រែ: មានជាតិស្ថានីយ៍ និង ជាតិស្ថានីយ៍ ដែលកើតមាន។

Teacher: Behind the temple there is always the hut of the chief monk.

Student: The hut of the chief monk is always behind the temple.

Drill G. Transformation

MODEL: ប្រែ: ខ្ញុំមានសីប្លីក្នុងឆ្នាំនេះ ហើយខ្ញុំមានសីប្លីក្នុងឆ្នាំនេះ ដែលខ្ញុំមានសីប្លីក្នុងឆ្នាំនេះ

Teacher: I have missed coming to visit you for a long time because I have never had any free time at all.

Student: He didn't come visit the monk because he wasn't free.
Drill H. Expansion

1.  The teacher (monk) goes to the school.
2.  The chief monk goes to the school.
3.  The chief monk and two monks go to the school.
4.  The chief monk and two monks go to the school in front of the palace.
5.  The chief monk and two monks go to the school in front of the palace called the Buddhist Institute.

Drill I. Reduction

1.  The chief monk and two monks go to the school in front of the palace called the Buddhist Institute.
2.  The chief monk and two monks go to the school in front of the palace.
3.  The chief monk and two monks go to the school.
4.  The chief monk goes to the school.

5.  The teacher (monk) goes to the school.

Drill J.  Expansion

1.  He didn't come to beg alms.

2.  He didn't come to beg alms yesterday.

3.  The three monks didn't come to beg alms yesterday.

4.  The three monks didn't come to beg alms at my house yesterday.

Drill K.  Reduction

1.  The three monks didn't come to beg alms at my house yesterday.

2.  The three monks didn't come to beg alms yesterday.

3.  He didn't come to beg alms yesterday.

4.  He didn't come to beg alms.
UNIT 69

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. 

John

2.  

Sok

3.  

John

4.  

Sok

5.  

John

6.  

Sok

7.  

John

In Cambodia, besides Chinese, Vietnamese, and Europeans, what other nationalities are there?

There are Indians, Lao, and Chams.

Oh, I forgot. I saw an Indian selling cloth at the New Market. As for the Lao and the Chams, how do they earn a living for the most part?

There aren't many Lao. They mostly come to study. As for the Chams, they have lived in Cambodia for a long time.

How long (since when) have the Chams lived in Cambodia?

According to history, after Champa was defeated in the invasion from Annam, many Chams fled from their homeland to go live in neighboring countries, for example Cambodia and Indonesia.

How come they didn't stay with the Vietnamese?
8. ទំនែ្មិត្តភ័ក្ស្ ទីក្រឡ សម្រាប់មសំខាន់្បាន?  
Sok  
The Vietnamese mistreated them badly. How could they live with them?  
John  

9. ប្រស្តាប់សង្ខេះដល់ក្រឡ ប្អូនបាន?  
Sok  
Now how many Chams are there in Cambodia?  
John  

10. ឆាប រុបិសាចឹម្ ប្អូនបាន?  
Sok  
There are more than one hundred thousand.  
John  

11. មកក្នុងក្រឡអាចសរសេរព័ត៌មានសុខភាព?  
Sok  
In what provinces do most of them live?  
John  

12. មកមកទឹកសុខភាពខ្ពស់ ស្តើងឈានីរឿងមុនឈានីរឿង?  
Sok  
For the most part they live in Kompong Cham province and in Chrui Changvar near Phnom Penh.  
John  

13. មុនក្រឡ?  
Sok  
How do the Chams earn a living?  
John  

14. ប្រស្តាប់សង្ខេះលើកជើងក្រឡ ពោះធានាផ្លែធានា្  
Sok  
For the most part they fish, grow crops, and are cattle traders.  
John  

15. មកក្នុងក្រឡអាចសរសេរព័ត៌មានសុខភាពអាច ជើងឈានីរឿងមុនឈានីរឿង?  
Sok  
I think that all those Chams have a life and customs which are not very different from the Cambodians.  
John  

16. មកមកទឹកសុខភាពខ្ពស់ ស្តើងឈានីរឿងមុនឈានីរឿង?  
Sok  
Not very different, but people can know (who is) a Cham, because the Chams wear a sarong and a cap or a turban. The Chams speak Cambodia well, but they still use Cham in their family dealings (relations).  
John
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. ដែលមានរដុលសំបូរពណ៌រ រុកៗ?  
   In Phnom Penh what kinds of nationality are there?

2. រាប់បេសាហាមថ្មីសេចក្តីទៅ ?  
   In Washington what kinds of nationality are there?

3. ជំនាញកាដឹកជញ្ជូនធ្វើបាន?  
   In Canada what kinds of nationality are there?

4. មានក្មេងស្រីស្រស់ស្អាតមិន?  
   In San Francisco what kinds of nationality are there?

5. ស្រមេស៊ីស្រីនៅក្នុងក្រុងារាយ នៅ ឬ មិន?  
   In San Francisco what kinds of house are there?

6. មានផ្លូវ។ រាល់ប្រទេសនឹងខ្មែរបាន?  
   In San Francisco what kinds of street are there?

7. មានផ្លូវការជើងៗស្រឹងនៅទីនោះ?  
   In San Francisco what kinds of market are there?

8. មានផ្លូវការជើងៗស្រឹងនៅផ្លូវឆាប់?  
   In San Francisco what kinds of wat are there?

Drill B. Double Substitution

1. ជាប់នឹងអាមេរិកមួយ អាមេរិកមួយ រស់មកនៅក្នុងកន្លែងនេះ?  
   Besides Cambodians, they see that there are Indians and Chinese.

2. ជាប់នឹងវ៉ូតណែសមាស វ៉ូតណែសមាស រស់មកនៅក្នុងកន្លែងនេះ?  
   Besides Vietnamese, they see that there are Japanese and Lao.

3. ជាប់នឹងអាមេរិកមួយ អាមេរិកមួយ រស់មកនៅក្នុងកន្លែងនេះ?  
   Besides Americans, they see that there are Vietnamese and Koreans.

4. ជាប់នឹងអាមេរិកមួយ អាមេរិកមួយ រស់មកនៅក្នុងកន្លែងនេះ?  
   Besides French, they see that there are Cambodians and Russians.

5. ជាប់នឹងអាមេរិកមួយ អាមេរិកមួយ រស់មកនៅក្នុងកន្លែងនេះ?  
   Besides cars, they see that there are cycles and bicycles.

6. ជាប់នឹងអាមេរិកមួយ អាមេរិកមួយ រស់មកនៅក្នុងកន្លែងនេះ?  
   Besides monks, they see that there are government workers and soldiers.

7. ជាប់នឹងអាមេរិកមួយ អាមេរិកមួយ រស់មកនៅក្នុងកន្លែងនេះ?  
   Besides Cambodian students, they see that there are foreign students and journalists.

8. ជាប់នឹងអាមេរិកមួយ អាមេរិកមួយ រស់មកនៅក្នុងកន្លែងនេះ?  
   Besides the Chief of State, they see that there are various ambassadors and government officials.
Drill C. Double Substitution

1. The Indians sell textiles. As for the Chams, they mostly buy cattle.

2. The Indians live near the New Market. As for the Chams, they mostly live in Chrui Changvar.

3. The Indians speak quickly. As for the Chams, they mostly speak slowly.

4. The Spanish speak quickly. As for the French, they mostly speak slowly.

5. The Spanish stand around at leisure in front of the house. As for the French, they mostly talk to each other in the house.

6. My older brother travels. As for his son he mostly stays at home.

7. My older brother goes to work. As for his son he mostly stays home.

8. The Lao in Cambodia are mostly students.

9. The Chams in Cambodia are mostly cattle merchants.

10. The French in Cambodia are mostly teachers.

11. The French in Vietnam are mostly businessmen.

12. The French in this city are mostly workers.
6. The Vietnamese in Phnom Penh are mostly workers.
The Cambodians in Phnom Penh are mostly government officials.
The workers in Phnom Penh are mostly speakers of French.

Drill E. Positive Response

MODEL: មានស្រុកខ្មែរជាឈាមជាច្រើនៗទេ? មានស្រុកខ្មែរជាឈាមជាច្រើនៗទេ?

Teacher: Are there a lot of Chinese in Cambodia?

Student: There are rather many.

Drill F. Negative Response

MODEL: មិនមានស្រុកខ្មែរជាឈាមជាច្រើនៗទេ? មិនមានស្រុកខ្មែរជាឈាមជាច្រើនៗទេ?

Teacher: Are there a lot of Chinese in Cambodia?

Student: No, there aren't many.
Drill G. Transformation

MODEL: ជីវ: ប្រឹក្សាន់កាចថាសីត្រ
សូ: សិស្សមិនដឹកនាំមុនប្រឹក្សាន់កាចថាសីត្រ

1. យើងមិនប្រឹក្សាន់កាចថាសីត្រក្នុងមុខការប្រឹក្សាន់កាចថាសីត្រ

2. យើងប្រឹក្សាន់កាចថាសីត្រ

3. សិស្សមិនដឹកនាំមុនប្រឹក្សាន់កាចថាសីត្រ

4. យើងមិនប្រឹក្សាន់កាចថាសីត្រក្នុងមុខការប្រឹក្សាន់កាចថាសីត្រ

5. យើងមិនប្រឹក្សាន់កាចថាសីត្រក្នុងមុខការប្រឹក្សាន់កាចថាសីត្រ

6. យើងមិនប្រឹក្សាន់កាចថាសីត្រក្នុងមុខការប្រឹក្សាន់កាចថាសីត្រ

7. យើងមិនប្រឹក្សាន់កាចថាសីត្រក្នុងមុខការប្រឹក្សាន់កាចថាសីត្រ

Teacher: The Chams do not eat pork.

Student: The majority of Chams do not usually eat pork.

Drill H. Response

MODEL: ជីវ: មានការអានវ៉ារបស់ខ្លួនឯង? សូ: មានការអានវ៉ារបស់ខ្លួនឯង

1. មានការអានវ៉ារបស់ខ្លួនឯង?

2. មានការអានវ៉ារបស់ខ្លួនឯង?

3. មានការអានវ៉ារបស់ខ្លួនឯង?

4. មានការអានវ៉ារបស់ខ្លួនឯង?

5. មានការអានវ៉ារបស់ខ្លួនឯង?

6. មានការអានវ៉ារបស់ខ្លួនឯង?

Teacher: Do you eat pork?

Student: It's O.K. for me to eat it.
Drill I.  Response

MODEL:  ឬ ប្រអប់ជាតិជាតិវេះ បានបានបាត់ៗស្រាប់?  (សម្រាប់ជាតិជាតិវេះ)
         សម្រាប់ប្រព័ន្ធដៃីត្តិជាតិ និងសម្រាប់រដ្ឋដូចជាខ្មែរ   និងអង្គការសង្ស័យឈ្មោះជាតិមួយដែលបានបាត់ៗស្រាប់

1. ប្រព័ន្ធដៃីត្តិជាតិជាតិវេះ បានបាត់ៗស្រាប់?  (ឬ)

Teacher:  To which country did the Chams flee from their own country?  (Cambodia and Indonesia)

Student:  According to history, the Chams fled from their own country to Cambodia and Indonesia.
1. Mr. Smith was taking a walk, met a monk, greeted him, and asked after his health.

2. The monk also asked after the health of Mr. Smith, and Mr. Smith told the monk "I'm well as usual."

3. Mr. Smith knew that the monk was going to school and asked him where the school was.

4. The monk said, "My school is near the palace. This school is called the Presh Suramarti Buddhist Lycée (Institute)."

5. The monks study there two years. Now the monk will begin to study in the third class.
1. មីការប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិចុះរហូតដល់ក្នុងប្រការប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិ។
2. ប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិចុះរហូតដល់ក្នុងប្រការប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិ។
3. ប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិឆ្លងកាត់សម្រាប់ការប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិ។
4. ប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិឆ្លងកាត់សម្រាប់ការប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិ។
5. ប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិឆ្លងកាត់សម្រាប់ការប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិ។
6. ប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិឆ្លងកាត់សម្រាប់ការប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិ។
7. ប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិឆ្លងកាត់សម្រាប់ការប្រការពារអន្តរជាតិ។

1. In the Preah Suramarit Buddhist Institute they teach all subjects just as in other lycées.
2. Not only this, but they teach Pali, Sanskrit and foreign languages like French and English, and religion too.
3. When Mr. Smith hears this he asks the monk if it's true that he speaks English.
4. The monk says he can speak some but he doesn't know many words.
5. At present the monk lives in Wat Unnalom.
6. In this wat there are many monks, and there is a Buddhist elementary school.
7. Some monks go to this school; some others go to the Buddhist Institute.
1. The monks eat only twice a day, that is, in the morning and the time before noon.

2. The monks don't eat in the afternoon, but if they are tired they can drink beverages like tea, coffee and orange juice, for example.

3. In each wat there is a chief monk, who is the person who oversees and administers the affairs in the wat.

4. He lives in a house behind the temple.

5. Today he is not at the wat. He and the deputy went to pray in a house to the east of the wat.

6. The monks and the novices go to pray in the temple.

7. On days that are not holy days or holidays, the monks go seek alms at the houses of the peasants near the wat.

8. They (the peasants) offer food to the monks to take to eat in the wat.

9. Only on holidays and holy days do they normally go to offer food to the monks in the wat.

10. On some holidays, they invite the monks to come eat in their houses.
1. In Cambodia, besides Chinese, Vietnamese and Europeans, one sees that there are Indians, Lao, and Chams.

2. The Indians mostly make a living selling cloth. As for the Lao, they mostly come to study in the various schools in Phnom Penh.

3. The Chams came to ask to stay in Cambodia after Champa was defeated in the invasion from Annam.

4. Since the Vietnamese made much hardship for them, some other Chams also fled from their country to Indonesia.

5. In Cambodia there are more than a hundred thousand Chams and the majority mostly make a living by fishing and by trading in cattle.

6. Mostly, they live in the province of Kompong Cham and in Chrui Changvar near Phnom Penh.

7. They have customs and traditions which are not very different from those of the Cambodians.

8. But there are some ways by which you can know that they are Chams, because they wear sarongs and Moslem hats.

9. The Chams speak Cambodian rather fluently, but they still speak Cham in their family dealings.

10. They are Moslems, but their temples are decorated in the Cambodian style.
UNIT 71

BASIC MONOLOGUE

1.  The Mekong River is the largest in Asia.

2.  This river originates in the mountains of Tibet and is 2,700 miles or 4320 kilometers long.

3.  The Mekong flows into the territory of Indochina in Laos and enters Cambodian territory at the waterfall called Khone.

4.  This waterway is of great use to Cambodia and the other countries of Indochina.

5.  Several large Cambodian cities have been established along the shores of the river, for example, Stung Treng, Kratie, Kompong Cham and Phnom Penh.

6.  Besides all these cities, there are many other sroks (an administrative unit) which also have large populations.

7.  In all these sroks and villages, the country people for the most part cultivate various crops, such as tobacco, corn, beans, and all kinds of vegetables.
Travellers by boat to Kompong Cham or Kratie can see all these plantations extending almost as far as the eye can see.

In the season of high water the Mekong and all the streams rise.

Because of the water in these streams, the peasants who live far from the large rivers can get plenty of water.

When the river water flows back, there is silt left behind.

This silt contains rich fertilizer.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. The Mekong is the longest river in Asia.

2. The Mekong is the largest river in Asia.

3. The Mekong is the largest river in Southeast Asia.

4. Tonle Sap is the largest river in Southeast Asia.

5. Tonle Sap is the largest river in Cambodia.

6. Tonle Sap is the river that has the most fish in Cambodia.

7. Tonle Sap is the river that has the clearest water in Cambodia.

8. The Bassac is the river that has the clearest water in Cambodia.

9. The Bassac is the river that has the most shallow water in Cambodia.

10. The Bassac is the river that has the deepest water in Cambodia.

Drill B. Substitution

1. Along the river bank you can see villages and cities too.

2. Along National Route 1 you can see villages and cities too.

3. Along National Route 1 you can see many houses of peasants.

4. Along National Route 1 you can see many markets and houses of peasants.
Near National Route 1 you can see many markets and houses of peasants.

Near Phnom Penh you can see many markets and houses of peasants.

Near the railroad station you can see many markets and houses of peasants.

Near the railroad station you can see many taxis and cyclos.

Near the railroad station you can see many tourists.

At the airport you can see many tourists.

Drill C. Response

MODEL: ៖ː មួយឡានស្ទ្រីស្ថាបនិកមជ្ជកម្មបានត្រូវបានបង្កើតឡើងបាន? (គេហៅថា រុក្រស្រេច កំពុងចេញពីក្រោយថ្ងៃ)

អាហារ: លោកអ្នកនឹងបានសិក្ដើរុក្រស្រេចដែលបានបង្កើតឡើងបាន?

Teacher: នៅក្នុងក្រុងដែលនៅក្នុងទឹកដើងម៉ាកូងមានដូច្នេះទេ? (Stung Treng, Kratie, Kompong Cham, and Kandal)

Student: The provinces of Stung Treng, Kratie, Kompong Cham and Kandal have cities on the Mekong.
4. មួយនៅកន្លែងណាមានអតិថិជនឆ្លង់ពីរជាការ?  (ប្រទេស​បារាំង)

5. អាច្លង់ពីរមានអតិថិជនប៉ុន្មានជាការ?  (ប្រទេស​បារាំង)

Drill D. Response

MODEL:  ឆ្នាំង មានអតិថិជនឆ្លង់ពីរជាការ?  (ប្រទេស បារាំង ស្រុតពីរជាការ)

Teacher: Do you know what the large Cambodian cities are called? (Phnom Penh, Kompong Cham, Battambang)

Student: According to what I know, Phnom Penh, Kompong Cham and Battambang are the large Cambodian cities.

Drill E. Interrogative Transformation

MODEL:  តើ មានអតិថិជនឆ្លង់ពីរជាការ?  (ប្រទេស បារាំង គឺជាការ)

Teacher: As far as I know Phnom Penh, Kompong Cham and Battambang are the large Cambodian cities.

Student: Do you know what the large Cambodian cities are called?
2. They plant vegetable plots along the Mekong. (Tonle Sap)

3. Teachers explain to students.

4. They see that there are many vegetable plots along the Tonle Sap.

5. They know the Mekong is a waterway.

Drill F. Transformation and Substitution

MODEL:

Teacher: For the most part, they plant vegetable plots along the Mekong. (Tonle Sap)

Student: They see that there are many vegetable plots along the Tonle Sap.

Drill G. Expansion

1. The Mekong is a waterway.

2. The Mekong is one ___ waterway.

3. The Mekong is one large ___ waterway.

4. The Mekong is one large important waterway.

5. The Mekong is one large important waterway in Asia.

6. They know the Mekong is one large waterway.
Cambodian Basic Course

Drill H. Reduction

1. តើបានស្គាល់ក្នុងក្រុមក្រុងទី៣១ទេ?

They know the Mekong is one large important waterway in Asia.

2. តើបានស្គាល់ក្នុងក្រុងទី៣២ទេ?

The Mekong is one large important waterway in Asia.

3. តើបានស្គាល់ក្នុងក្រុងទី៣៣ទេ?

The Mekong is one large important waterway.

4. តើបានស្គាល់ក្នុងក្រុងទី៣៤ទេ?

The Mekong is one large waterway.

5. តើបានស្គាល់ក្នុងក្រុងទី៣៥ទេ?

The Mekong is one waterway.

6. តើបានស្គាល់ក្នុងក្រុងទី៣៦ទេ?

The Mekong is a waterway.
UNIT 72

BASIC MONOLOGUE

1.  This fertilizer helps the plants to grow (for) good harvests.

2.  Peasants who have fields not far from the river do not have to buy fertilizer to put on their fields.

3.  Every time the water rises, the water of the river takes the silt and spreads it on the fields just as if the people had spread new fertilizer.

4.  At Phnom Penh the Mekong divides into four branches (faces).

5.  That is why the peasants call it the four-faced river or Catomuk.

6.  In Phnom Penh the water from the Mekong flows into the South China Sea through the Bassac and the Mekong.

7.  A part of the water of this river flows (up) into the Tonle Sap.

8.  This large lake has a great deal of importance for Cambodia.
That is, it is the most important concentration of fish in Southeast Asia.

Every year many tons of fish are caught and taken to be made into food.

They use many fish to make dried fish, smoked fish, and prohok (fish paste).

All these foods can be kept for a long time without spoiling.

They take a large quantity of this (processed fish) and sell it abroad, especially in the neighboring countries in Southeast Asia.

In the season of low water, the water of Tonle Sap flows out of the lake.

It is on that occasion that the Cambodians celebrate a festival called the Water Festival. (literally: row the boats)
DRILLS

Drill A. Response

MODEL: បើ ប្រហែលជារងាស់ ដំណើរ កំរើ ប្រដាប់ មានមរណៈមិនមិនទៀត? 

Teacher: Do the peasants like to use fertilizer or not?

Student: Now they like to use fertilizer a lot because Cambodia has a fertilizer factory.

Drill B. Response

MODEL: ប្រហែលជារងាស់ ស្នោរ៖ មានមរណៈដំណើរ កំរើ ប្រដាប់ មាន់? (នៅនៅពេល ភ្លើង ក្តៅ)

Teacher: At what time do they celebrate the Water Festival? (when the water goes down)

Student: They celebrate the Water Festival when the water goes down.
Drill C. Substitution

1.  ស្មែងដែលការជួបគេនឹងប្រកួតប៊ុត ។
   (កន្លែងនេះមានអ្នកប្រកួតប៊ុត)
2.  ស្មែងដែលការជួបគេនឹងប្រកួតប៊ុត ។
   (កន្លែងនេះមានអ្នកប្រកួតប៊ុត)
3.  ស្មែងដែលការជួបគេនឹងប្រកួតប៊ុត ។
   (កន្លែងនេះមានអ្នកប្រកួតប៊ុត)
4.  ស្មែងដែលការជួបគេនឹងប្រកួតប៊ុត ។
   (កន្លែងនេះមានអ្នកប្រកួតប៊ុត)
5.  ស្មែងដែលការជួបគេនឹងប្រកួតប៊ុត ។
   (កន្លែងនេះមានអ្នកប្រកួតប៊ុត)
6.  ស្មែងដែលការជួបគេនឹងប្រកួតប៊ុត ។
   (កន្លែងនេះមានអ្នកប្រកួតប៊ុត)

At the time the water rises they race boats for fun.
At the time the water rises they ride boats for fun.
At the time the water rises they fish for fun.
At the time the water rises they swim for fun.
At the time the water rises they bathe for fun.
At the time the water rises they ride boats for fun.

Drill D. Substitution

1.  ត្រូវឱ្យមានអាហារធានាបំផុត ។
   (ដូចស្មែងនេះមានអាហារធានាបំផុត)
2.  ត្រូវឱ្យមានអាហារធានាបំផុត ។
   (ដូចស្មែងនេះមានអាហារធានាបំផុត)
3.  ត្រូវឱ្យមានអាហារធានាបំផុត ។
   (ដូចស្មែងនេះមានអាហារធានាបំផុត)
4.  ត្រូវឱ្យមានអាហារធានាបំផុត ។
   (ដូចស្មែងនេះមានអាហារធានាបំផុត)
5.  ត្រូវឱ្យមានអាហារធានាបំផុត ។
   (ដូចស្មែងនេះមានអាហារធានាបំផុត)
6.  ត្រូវឱ្យមានអាហារធានាបំផុត ។
   (ដូចស្មែងនេះមានអាហារធានាបំផុត)

Fish is an important food of the Cambodian people.
Fish is an important food in Asia.
Pork is an important food in Asia.
Beef is an important food in Asia.
Mutton is an important food in Asia.
Mutton is an important food in America.
7. សារាជាតិត្រូវបានប្រការនៅស្ថាប័នការណ៍ 
   រហូតដល់ពេលដើមក្លែង

8. សារាជាតិត្រូវបានប្រការនៅស្ថាប័នការណ៍ 
   រហូតដល់ពេលដើមក្លែង

Drill E. Substitution

1. ប្រភេទនេះមានស្លាប់ 
   ក្នុងវត្តុនេះ

2. ផ្លែស្រមោលបានប្រការនៅប្រពន្ធនេះ 
   ក្នុងវត្តុនេះ

3. មនុស្សបានប្រការនៅទីនេះ 
   ក្នុងវត្តុនេះ

4. ទឹកថ្មីបានប្រការនៅភ្នំពេញ 
   ក្នុងវត្តុនេះ

5. ទឹកថ្មីបានប្រការនៅភ្នំពេញ 
   ក្នុងវត្តុនេះ

6. មនុស្សបានប្រការនៅភ្នំពេញ 
   ក្នុងវត្តុนេះ

7. មនុស្សបានប្រការនៅភ្នំពេញ 
   ក្នុងវត្តុนេះ

8. មនុស្សបានប្រការនៅភ្នំពេញ 
   ក្នុងវត្តុនេះ

Drill F. Substitution

1. មានក្រូចក្លាយតូចពិសុស 
   មានក្រូចក្លាយតូចឆ្លាស់ប្រយោគ 

2. មានក្រូចក្លាយតូចពិសុស 
   មានក្រូចក្លាយតូចឆ្លាស់ប្រយោគ 

3. មានក្រូចក្លាយតូចពិសុស 
   មានក្រូចក្លាយតូចឆ្លាស់ប្រយោគ 

4. មានក្រូចក្លាយតូចពិសុស 
   មានក្រូចក្លាយតូចឆ្លាស់ប្រយោគ 

5. មានក្រូចក្លាយតូចពិសុស 
   មានក្រូចក្លាយតូចឆ្លាស់ប្រយោគ 

One part of the fish they keep for food; what's left over they sell 
by exporting it abroad.

One part of the pork they keep for food; what's left over they give 
to their neighbors.

One part of the rice they keep for food; what's left over they give 
to foreign countries.

One part of the peanuts they keep for food; what's left over they give 
to oil factories.

One part of the corn they keep for food; what's left over they sell 
by exporting it abroad.
Cambodian Basic Course

food; what's left over they give to France and Japan.
One part of the beef they keep for food; what's left over they give to neighboring countries.
One part of the fish sauce they keep for food; what's left over they sell to neighboring countries.
One part of the sugar cane they keep for food; what's left over they sell to sugar factories.

Drill G. Expansion

1. ដើរឈឺរីកនៃខ្សែម៉ូសេដែល។
2. ដើរឈឺរីកនៃខ្សែម៉ូសេដែល។
3. ដើរឈឺរីកនៃខ្សែម៉ូសេដែល។
4. ដើរឈឺរីកនៃខ្សែម៉ូសេដែល។
5. ដើរឈឺរីកនៃខ្សែម៉ូសេដែល។
6. ដើរឈឺរីកនៃខ្សែម៉ូសេដែល។
7. ដើរឈឺរីកនៃខ្សែម៉ូសេដែល។

In the flood season
Every flood season
Every flood season the Mekong brings silt.
Every flood season the Mekong brings a lot of silt.
Every flood season the Mekong brings a lot of silt to deposit on the fields.
Every flood season the Mekong brings a lot of silt to deposit on all the fields.
Every flood season the Mekong brings a lot of silt to deposit on all the fields that are flooded.

Drill H. Reduction

1. ដើរឈឺរីកនៃខ្សែម៉ូសេដែល។
2. ដើរឈឺរីកនៃខ្សែម៉ូសេដែល។
3. ដើរឈឺរីកនៃខ្សែម៉ូសេដែល។
4. ដើរឈឺរីកនៃខ្សែម៉ូសេដែល។

Every flood season the Mekong brings a lot of silt to deposit on all the fields that are flooded.
Every flood season the Mekong brings a lot of silt to deposit on all the fields.
Every flood season the Mekong brings a lot of silt to deposit on the fields.
Every flood season the Mekong brings a lot of silt.
Every flood season the Mekong brings silt.

Every flood season
In the flood season

Teacher: They sell as much fish as they catch abroad.

Student: They don't export as much fish as they catch abroad; they keep some to sell inside the country.
Drill J. Response

MODEL: ចំពោះឈុត្រដែលបានបង្កើតការសម្រួលបានបង្កើតជាភាអធិរ័នជាអ្វី?

Teacher: In Asia, for the most part they eat beef don’t they? (they normally eat fish more)

Student: They do eat some beef, but they normally eat fish more.

1. តើបានបញ្ចេញសម្រាប់បរិសុំជាភាអធិរ័នជាអ្វី? (តាមរយៈនាឡឹងរឱ្យមិន)

2. តើយើងបានបញ្ចេញសម្រាប់បរិសុំជាភាអធិរ័នជាអ្វី? (តាមរយៈនាឡឹងរឱ្យមិន)

3. តើយើងបានបញ្ចេញសម្រាប់បរិសុំជាភាអធិរ័នជាអ្វី? (តាមរយៈនាឡឹងរឱ្យមិន)

4. តើយើងបានបញ្ចេញសម្រាប់បរិសុំជាភាអធិរ័នជាអ្វី? (តាមរយៈនាឡឹងរឱ្យមិន)

5. តើយើងបានបញ្ចេញសម្រាប់បរិសុំជាភាអធិរ័នជាអ្វី? (តាមរយៈនាឡឹងរឱ្យមិន)
1.  Hello. How are you?

2.  I'm fine, and you? Are your children well? How come you didn't bring them along to visit too?

3.  They're all well, but I didn't let them come along because I had to get ready very quickly.

4.  Did you come on business?

5.  No I don't have any very important business. I was going to see the new school in Phum Trabek and I just came to visit you.

6.  How is the school? I haven't had a chance to go see it, but I hear that it's very pretty.

7.  Yes, it's very nice. At present they still haven't finished building it completely.
8. សូមឈ្មោះថាខ្មែរណាមួយដែលបានសុវត្ថិភាព។

Pon  Next week I'll go look at it, without fail.

Sok  Are you very busy now?

Pon  Yes, now I'm in my busy time. The rain a few weeks ago has given us plenty of water.

Sok  This morning I saw them plowing and harrowing almost everywhere.

Pon  I finished plowing a few days ago. Now since there is enough rain, (I can) harrow and sow at the same time.

Sok  What kind of rice will you sow?

Pon  I'll sow ordinary rice.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

I was in too much of a hurry to take the children to visit.
I was in too much of a hurry to take the book to you.
I was in too much of a hurry to take the clothes to be laundered.
I was in too much of a hurry to take the things to you.
I was in too much of a hurry to take the car to be washed.
I was in too much of a hurry to take the bicycle to be washed.
I was in too much of a hurry to take the letter to mail.
I was in too much of a hurry to take the garbage to throw out.

Drill B. Substitution

He went to see that place for about a week and then he came on over to this school.
He went to see that place for about a week and then he came on over to this place.
He went to see that place for about a week, and then he came on over to this village.
He went to see that place for about a week, and then he came on over to visit you.
He went to see that place for about a week, and then he came on over to meet you.
a week, and then he came on over to question you. He went to see that place for about a week, and then he came on over to see this city.

He went to see that place for about a week, and then he came on over to rest here.

I hear that that city is very pretty, but I haven't gone to see it yet.

I hear that that place is very pretty, but I haven't gone to see it yet.

I hear that that place is very nice but I haven't gone to visit it yet.

I hear that that place is very nice, but I haven't arrived (there) yet.

I hear that that seashore is very nice, but I haven't arrived (there) yet.

I hear that that seashore has a lot of people, but I haven't arrived (there) yet.

I hear that that seashore has very nice sand, but I haven't arrived (there) yet.

Just as soon as he arrived, they all left.

Just as soon as he finished, they all left the school.

Just as soon as he looked, they all closed the door of the room.

Just as soon as he met (then), they all prepared to continue the trip.
5. Just as soon as he knew, they all went away.

6. Just as soon as he heard, they all ran away.

7. Just as soon as he saw (them), they almost all got in the car.

8. Just as soon as he arrived, they all stopped work.

Drill E. Triple Substitution

1. Now they have abundant rain, and they can begin to plow.

2. Today they have abundant snow, and they can go skiing.

3. This year they have abundant rice, and they can export it abroad.

4. This month they have abundant rain, and they can sow.

5. Now they have abundant money, and they can buy cars.

6. Next week they will have an abundant number of words, and will be able to speak some Cambodian.

Drill F. Response

MODEL: ງារ៉ូ របស់អ្នកជាមួយអ្នកខ្លះ? ឬ អ្នកការណ៍ជាមួយអ្នកស្រស់?

(នៅក្នុងទីក្រុង) រូបភាពដែលអ្នកដំណើរការជាមួយអ្នក

Teacher: This month what are they mostly busy doing? (rain, plant)

Student: This month there's rather a lot of rain, they're mostly busy planting.
3. នៅពេលបីកែសម្រាប់? (ការបីកែសម្រាប់)

4. នៅពេលកែសម្រាប់? (ការកែសម្រាប់)

5. នៅពេលកែសម្រាប់? (ការបីកែសម្រាប់)

Drill G. Expansion

MODEL: ខ្លួនឯងមកនៅទីជឿជាតិប៉ុន្តែ
ក្នុងរយៈពេលនេះ ខ្លួនឯងមកដល់ប្រទេសរបស់ដើម្បីបង្កើតផ្លូវតែនិមិត្ត។

1. ខ្លួនឯងមកនៅទីជឿជាតិប៉ុន្តែ
ក្នុងរយៈពេលនេះ ខ្លួនឯងមកដល់ប្រទេសរបស់ដើម្បីបង្កើតផ្លូវតែនិមិត្ត។

2. ខ្លួនឯងមកនៅទីជឿជាតិប៉ុន្តែ
ក្នុងរយៈពេលនេះ ខ្លួនឯងមកដល់ប្រទេសរបស់ដើម្បីបង្កើតផ្លូវតែនិមិត្ត។

Teacher: This season mostly he is not at home. (fishing in Tonle Thom)

Student: He has gone fishing at Tonle Thom.

Drill H. Expansion

1. ពីព្រឹត្តិការណ៍។

2. ពីព្រឹត្តិការណ៍។

3. ពីព្រឹត្តិការណ៍។

4. ពីព្រឹត្តិការណ៍។

5. ពីព្រឹត្តិការណ៍។

6. ពីព្រឹត្តិការណ៍។

They begin to plow and harrow.

Whenever there is rain they begin to plow and harrow.

Whenever there is sufficient rain they begin to plow and harrow.

Whenever there is sufficient rain they begin to plow, harrow, and plant.

Whenever there is sufficient rain they begin to plow, harrow, and plant rice.

Whenever there is sufficient rain they begin to plow, harrow, and plant rice which they have grown.
Whenever there is sufficient rain they begin to plow, harrow, and plant rice which they have grown previously.

Whenever there is sufficient rain they begin to plow, harrow, and plant rice which they have grown previously.

Whenever there is sufficient rain they begin to plow, harrow, and plant rice.

Whenever there is sufficient rain they begin to plow, harrow, and plant.

Whenever there is sufficient rain they begin to plow and harrow.

Whenever there is rain they begin to plow and harrow.

They begin to plow and harrow.
UNIT 74

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. Sok  How many days ago did you soak the seeds?
   Pon  I just soaked them yesterday.

2. Sok  How many days until they are ready to be sown?
   Pon  Oh, usually three or four days. As I figure it tomorrow or the day after tomorrow.

3. Sok  Where are you going to sow?
   Pon  In the two fields south of the house.

4. Sok  How come you're sowing only two fields?
   Pon  I think maybe sowing two fields will be sufficient to make a transplant in Trapeang Chak.

5. Sok  Then Trapeang Chak is very big?
   Pon  Big enough. If four people together had to transplant it, it would take about five days.

6. Sok  Does the pond usually have water?
    Pon  Right, but at times in the hot season  
    Sok  some shallow ponds evaporate until  
    Pon  the water is almost gone.

13.  Preakthom prey tuptu, aphas sarak?  
    Sok  If you transplant next month, when  
    Pon  will you be able to reap?

14.  Krom sarak chern, aphas sarak?  
    Sok  This rice is early maturing - it  
    Pon  seems that in four or five months  
    Sok  it can be reaped.

15.  Phnom penh, sarak lyal, aphas sarak?  
    Pon  Not very long, in that case. Let it  
    Sok  go for a little while, and then  
    Pon  you can put it in the granary. Do  
    Sok  you harvest yourself or do you  
    Pon  hire people to harvest?

16.  Prasat pagoda sarak lai phnom penh
    Sok  I guess I'll hire some, because the  
    Pon  pond is very big. If I harvest  
    Sok  with only two or three people it's  
    Pon  not easy.

17.  Thueun prasat pagoda sarak lai
    Sok  As for carrying it to the house, will  
    Pon  you hire somebody to help put it  
    Sok  in the granary (place where cattle  
    Pon  are used to thresh the grain)?

18.  No, this I can do little by little.  
    Sok  Wait and maybe at that time I'll  
    Pon  come visit you again.

19.  Prasat pagoda sarak lai phnom penh
    Pon  Please come. Any time is O.K.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. -medamnohngem siratth 
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻
   Tomorrow I can go help my uncle plant seed.

2. medamnohngem siratth 
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻
   Tomorrow I can go help my uncle plow.

3. medamnohngem siratth 
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻
   Tomorrow I can go help my uncle harrow.

4. medamnohngem siratth 
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻
   Tomorrow I can go help my uncle transplant.

5. medamnohngem siratth 
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻
   Tomorrow I can go help my uncle reap.

6. medamnohngem siratth 
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻
   Tomorrow I can go help my uncle straighten up the house.

7. medamnohngem siratth 
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻
   Tomorrow I can go help my uncle repair the car.

8. medamnohngem siratth 
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻
   Tomorrow I can go help my uncle teach.

Drill B. Substitution

1.  medamnohngem siratth ?
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻？
   Usually in the month the rice is ripe, can they harvest?

2. medamnohngem siratth ?
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻？
   Usually in the month the seedlings are large, can they pull (them)?

3. medamnohngem siratth ?
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻？
   Usually in the month there is a lot of water, can they transplant?

4. medamnohngem siratth ?
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻？
   Usually in the month a lot of snow falls, can they walk?

5. medamnohngem siratth ?
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻？
   Usually in the month there is a lot of rain, is it difficult to travel?

6. medamnohngem siratth ?
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻？
   Usually in the month the water is low, can they drive the car?

7. medamnohngem siratth ?
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻？
   Usually in the month it is the hottest, is it difficult to go out for a good time?

8. medamnohngem siratth ?
   明朝我會幫我叔叔種稻？
   Usually in the month it is very cold, is it hard to start the car?
Drill C. Substitution

1.  Now that there is a lot of rain, they can't plant.

2.  Now that the wind is strong, they can't row the boats.

3.  Now that the water is deep, they can't transplant.

4.  Now that the water flows swiftly, they can't swim.

5.  Now that the seedlings are short, they can't pull (them).

6.  Now that it is very hot, they can't walk.

7.  Now that it is very cool they can't take a bath.

8.  Now that the rice is very ripe, they can't reap with only 2 people.

Drill D. Substitution

1.  I think that since Trapeang Chak has too much water, it's difficult to transplant.

2.  I know that since Trapeang Chak has deep water, it's difficult to harrow.

3.  I see that since Trapeang Chak has a lot of grass, it's difficult to plow.

4.  I understand that since Trapeang Chak is too far away, it's difficult to go see (it).

5.  I know that since that school is too far away, it's difficult for the students to go study.

6.  I think that since now it's cold, it's difficult to go camping.

7.  I think that since last year the water rose very high, it's difficult to make a trip.
8. ឱស្រាលាញ់មួយមិនស្របស្រីស្រាជាតូចមួយទេ

Drill E. Response

MODEL: មិនស្រីស្រាជាតូចមួយទេទៅ? (មិន)

Teacher: Does Trapeang Chak have enough water in it to plant? (think)

Student: I think that since there is a lot of water now, you can't plant yet.

Drill F. Response

MODEL: គ្មាននោះមិនមានអាចប្រយុទ្ធនៅវៀតណាម៉ា? (មិន)

Teacher: When can they begin to plant? (water)

Student: They can't start to plant yet. They are waiting to have a little more water first.
5. អានរឿងឈ្លាមួយidents? 

(វិធីសាស្រ្តខ្មែរ)

Drill G. Response

Teacher: How come they let the seedlings get so long? (so it's easy to transplant)

Student: They let the seedlings get a little longer first so they're easy to transplant.

Drill H. Response

Teacher: In how many days can they finish planting this paddy? (the earth is not hard)

Student: Not long, according to me, because the earth is not hard.
Drill I. **Transformation**

**MODEL:** 
Tomorrow he has to go plow Trapeang Chak. (when)

**Teacher:** Tomorrow he has to go plow Trapeang Chak.

**Student:** When does he have to go plow Trapeang Chak?

**1.** ស្រែពីយឺតុពូកម្នែនបា្នាថាប្រុង (សាច់ងឺ)

**Teacher:** នៅពេលណាដែលពុកម្នែនបា្នាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)

**Student:** នៅពេលណាដែលពុកម្នែនបា្នាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)

**2.** រដ្ឋាភិបាលរក្សាសម្រាប់សាលារឿនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (សាច់ងឺ)

**Teacher:** ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍នៃសាលារឿនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)

**Student:** ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍នៃសាលារឿនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)

**3.** នាងកុមារបើកសម្រាប់ម៉ាស៊ីនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (សាច់សាត់)

**Teacher:** ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍នៃម៉ាស៊ីនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)

**Student:** ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍នៃម៉ាស៊ីនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)

**4.** រដ្ឋាភិបាលរក្សាសម្រាប់ម៉ាស៊ីនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)

**Teacher:** ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍នៃម៉ាស៊ីនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)

**Student:** ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍នៃម៉ាស៊ីនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)

**5.** រដ្ឋាភិបាលរក្សាសម្រាប់ម៉ាស៊ីនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)

**Teacher:** ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍នៃម៉ាស៊ីនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)

**Student:** ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍នៃម៉ាស៊ីនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)

**6.** រដ្ឋាភិបាលរក្សាសម្រាប់ម៉ាស៊ីនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)

**Teacher:** ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍នៃម៉ាស៊ីនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)

**Student:** ក្នុងប្រយោជន៍នៃម៉ាស៊ីនស្ថាបនាថាប្រុង (្នវិញ)
UNIT 75

NARRATION

1. The Mekong River is the largest river in Asia.
2. This river rises in the mountains of Tibet and flows into the sea in South Vietnam.
3. The Mekong River flows through Cambodia from the waterfall called Khone to the southern border of Cambodia and Vietnam, just at the border of Prey Veng and Takeo provinces.
4. This waterway has great importance to Cambodia and the other countries in Indochina.
5. Along the course of the river you can see many cities grow up, such as Stung Treng, Kratie, Kompong Cham and Phnom Penh for example.
6. Besides all these cities there are many other sroks and villages, and the peasants living here usually plant various crops such as tobacco, corn, beans, and all kinds of vegetables.
7. Travellers by boat or by car along the banks of the Mekong and the tributaries of this river can see all the fields extending as far as one can see.
8. In the season of high water, the Mekong river and all the creeks rise.
9. By means of these creeks, peasants who live far from the Mekong can get abundant water.
1. At the time of high waters, the Mekong flows over all the fields which are not far from the river.

2. This water carries silt along with it and spreads this silt on all those fields.

3. This silt is a kind of important fertilizer which helps the crops grow well every season.

4. The Mekong splits into four arms at Phnom Penh.

5. That is why they call it Catomuk (Four Faces, Four Arms).

6. One part of the water flows up to the Tonle Sap, which is a very important lake in Cambodia.

7. This large lake has a concentration of many tons of fish, which they catch to make into food to export to foreign countries every year.

8. They take some fish to make it into dried fish, smoked fish, or prohok, so it can be kept a long time without spoiling.

9. At the time the water (from the streams) recedes, the water from the Tonle Sap flows back out of this lake.

10. It is at this time that the Cambodians celebrate a festival which is called the Festival of Rowing Pirogues or Racing Pirogues (Water Festival).
1. At this time in the fields they are very busy.

2. In the few weeks of heavy rains, all the peasants plow and harrow almost everywhere.

3. Some peasants have already plowed, and therefore when there is rain they go to harrow in order to plant rice.

4. They make the soil of the field sufficiently soft, and only then can they begin to plant.

5. Some people sow ordinary rice, others sow glutinous rice.

6. When they sow floating rice they don’t have to prepare the field very well because floating rice can grow easily as long as it’s watered.

7. The rice they take to sow, they call seed.

8. They have to soak the seed so it can grow a little (germinate) and only then can they take it to sow.
1. Usually, when they have soaked the seed for 3 or 4 days, they can sow it.

2. They sow no more than they have land to transplant onto.

3. In 2 or 3 months they can pull up the rice and transplant it.

4. The fields where they transplant must at least have water up to nearly half the height of the seedlings.

5. That is why some people prefer to transplant in ponds.

6. Many ponds are large and deep too.

7. In the hot season, the ponds hardly evaporate at all.

8. It is in the hot season that they begin to reap the rice, take it to be threshed and put it in the granary.
UNIT 76

BASIC DIALOGUE

1.  Paul, when did you arrive here?

2.  I arrived three days ago but I haven't had the opportunity to meet anyone that I know at all.

3.  Are you going to stay long?

4.  No, I can stay only a month and I'm taking advantage of this time to travel to visit various places in Asia.

5.  Did you come with a group of tourists or by yourself?

6.  I came with another group of tourists. That's why I haven't yet had the opportunity to visit a single friend. Since I have been here for a day, the Cambodian Tourist Office has taken us to see almost every place.

7.  What things have you seen already?

8.  I've seen Angkor Wat; it's beautiful and very impressive.
9.  You've already had the chance to go to Angkor Wat?

10. Yes, I came directly from Rangoon to Siem Reap.

11. Oh, then how many days did you spend in Siem Reap?

12. I stayed one week. I went to see Angkor Wat every day.

13. Did you see it all?

14. Yes, I saw it all, but as you already know, when I tried to walk to see it all in one week, (I) couldn't see it very well.

15. Did you go to Banteay Srey?

16. Yes, I want to see it too. It's the prettiest temple of all. The decoration on the stone looks as if it were newly done. I took a lot of pictures too.

17. Did you see the sculpture along the walls of Angkor?

18. Oh, yes the sculpture is also beautiful and everyone wants to touch and rub it. Now it's shiny.
Whenever I went to Angkor Wat I wondered. I didn't know how the ancient Khmers built Angkor, that they took all those big blocks of stone and placed them one on the other, and they didn't even have cement.

Kim

Yes, it's really marvelous. In the National Museum in Phnom Penh I also saw ancient and modern sculpture.

Have you gone to see the Palace and the Emerald Pagoda yet?

Paul

I'm going to go see them tomorrow morning. Is there anything else I should see?

Kim

Yes, you should go see the museum displaying the Regalia worn when the king is crowned, the court where the throne is, and the Emerald Pagoda. The temple of the Emerald Pagoda is floored entirely in silver.

Paul

In that case tomorrow I will go see all these places before I do anything else.

Kim

I guess you have seen Independence Monument and Wat Phnom already?

Paul

I went to take pictures yesterday. I see that the decoration on the
Independence Monument blends the ancient and the modern.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. បដិសេសឲ្យលេងប៉ាពីក្នុងផ្ទៃក្មែងក្នុងការទំនើបខ្លះពីក្នុងបរិយាក្មែង។
   I arrived here 2 or 3 days ago, but I haven’t met anybody at all yet.

2. បដិសេសឲ្យលេងប៉ាពីក្នុងផ្ទៃក្មែងក្នុងការទំនើបខ្លះពីក្នុងបរិយាក្មែង។
   I arrived here 2 or 3 days ago, but I haven’t seen anybody at all yet.

3. បដិសេសឲ្យលេងប៉ាពីក្នុងផ្ទៃក្មែងក្នុងការទំនើបខ្លះពីក្នុងបរិយាក្មែង។
   I arrived here 2 or 3 days ago, but I haven’t gone to look for anybody at all yet.

4. បដិសេសឲ្យលេងប៉ាពីក្នុងផ្ទៃក្មែងក្នុងការទំនើបខ្លះពីក្នុងបរិយាក្មែង។
   I arrived here 2 or 3 days ago, but I haven’t telephoned anybody at all yet.

5. បដិសេសឲ្យលេងប៉ាពីក្នុងផ្ទៃក្មែងក្នុងការទំនើបខ្លះពីក្នុងបរិយាក្មែង។
   I arrived here 2 or 3 days ago, but I haven’t gone to anyone’s house at all yet.

6. បដិសេសឲ្យលេងប៉ាពីក្នុងផ្ទៃក្មែងក្នុងការទំនើបខ្លះពីក្នុងបរិយាក្មែង។
   I arrived here 2 or 3 days ago, but I haven’t gone to visit anybody at all yet.

7. បដិសេសឲ្យលេងប៉ាពីក្នុងផ្ទៃក្មែងក្នុងការទំនើបខ្លះពីក្នុងបរិយាក្មែង។
   I arrived here 2 or 3 days ago, but I haven’t got acquainted with anybody at all yet.

8. បដិសេសឲ្យលេងប៉ាពីក្នុងផ្ទៃក្មែងក្នុងការទំនើបខ្លះពីក្នុងបរិយាក្មែង។
   I arrived here 2 or 3 days ago, but I haven’t asked to be taken to visit anybody at all yet.

Drill B. Substitution

1. បដិសេសឲ្យលេងប៉ាពីក្នុងផ្ទៃក្មែងក្នុងការទំនើបខ្លះពីក្នុងបរិយាក្មែង។
   Yesterday I took advantage of being able to go to work for 2 or 3 hours.

2. បដិសេសឲ្យលេងប៉ាពីក្នុងផ្ទៃក្មែងក្នុងការទំនើបខ្លះពីក្នុងបរិយាក្មែង។
   Yesterday I took advantage of being able to meet him for 2 or 3 hours.

3. បដិសេសឲ្យលេងប៉ាពីក្នុងផ្ទៃក្មែងក្នុងការទំនើបខ្លះពីក្នុងបរិយាក្មែង។
   Yesterday I took advantage of being able to listen to tapes for 2 or 3 hours.

4. បដិសេសឲ្យលេងប៉ាពីក្នុងផ្ទៃក្មែងក្នុងការទំនើបខ្លះពីក្នុងបរិយាក្មែង។
   Yesterday I took advantage of being able to watch them row boats for 2 or 3 hours.

5. បដិសេសឲ្យលេងប៉ាពីក្នុងផ្ទៃក្មែងក្នុងការទំនើបខ្លះពីក្នុងបរិយាក្មែង។
   Yesterday I took advantage of being able to look at the exhibition hall for 2 or 3 hours.

6. បដិសេសឲ្យលេងប៉ាពីក្នុងផ្ទៃក្មែងក្នុងការទំនើបខ្លះពីក្នុងបរិយាក្មែង។
   Yesterday I took advantage of being
Drill C. Substitution

1. បានសម្រេចទៅបើករឿងចម្រៀង។
2. បានសម្រេចបើករឿងចម្រៀង។
3. បានសម្រេចទៅបើករឿងចម្រៀង។
4. បានសម្រេចបើករឿងចម្រៀង។
5. បានសម្រេចបើករឿងចម្រៀង។
6. បានសម្រេចបើករឿងចម្រៀង។
7. បានសម្រេចបើករឿងចម្រៀង។
8. បានសម្រេចទៅបើករឿងចម្រៀង។

Drill D. Substitution

1. បានសម្រេចបើករឿងចម្រៀង។
2. បានសម្រេចបើករឿងចម្រៀង។
3. បានសម្រេចបើករឿងចម្រៀង។
4. បានសម្រេចបើករឿងចម្រៀង។

I haven't gone to see Angkor Wat yet; I only hear that it is admirable.

I haven't gone to see that film yet; I only hear that it's good to see.

I haven't gone to see that place yet; I only hear that it is frightening.

I haven't gone to see the Emerald Pagoda yet; I only hear that it is attractive.

I haven't gone to see Wat Phnom yet; I only hear that it is pleasant.

I haven't gone to see the palace yet; I only hear that it makes you want to go see it.

I haven't gone to see Sihanoukville yet; I only hear that it is pleasant.

I haven't gone to see that house yet; I only hear that it makes you want to live in it.

I want to see him a day after I got here,

He came to see me a day after I got here.

He came to see (ask) me a day after I got here.

Mr. Smith came to visit this house.
a day after I got here.

Mr. Smith has been visiting this house since this morning.

Mr. Smith has been visiting this house since he went out.

Mr. Smith has been visiting this house since immediately after he arrived.

Mr. Smith has been visiting this house since I came in.

Teacher: Where did you go yesterday? (to see the palace and the School of Fine Arts)

Student: Yesterday they took me to see the palace and the School of Fine Arts.

Teacher: Have you ever gone to visit Siem Reap? (stay a long time)

Student: Yes, I have visited it, but I regret that I couldn't stay a long time.
Drill G. **Transformation**

**MODEL:** ឈុត: ការវិភាគពីទីក្រុងក្រោម។ 
(ប្រព័ន្ធដែលមាននូវទីក្រុង) សម្រាប់: ដែល ការវិភាគពីទីក្រុង។ 
ប្រសិនបើ ការវិភាគពីទីក្រុង សម្រាប់។

1. គេក៏មានការលេងក្នុងក្រុងម្នាក់? (គឺ/មិន)
2. ការស្លាប់គ្នានៅក្នុងក្រុងម្នាក់? (គឺ/មិន)
3. ការស្លាប់គ្នានៅក្នុងក្រុងម្នាក់? (គឺ/មិន)
4. ការស្លាប់គ្នានៅក្នុងក្រុងម្នាក់? (គឺ/មិន)
5. ការស្លាប់គ្នានៅក្នុងក្រុងម្នាក់? (គឺ/មិន)

**Teacher:** Did he come alone? (with a group of tourists)

**Student:** No, he didn’t come alone. He came with a group of tourists.
Drill H. Expansion

1. បើកសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ ខ្ញុំនឹងឃុំឃុំសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ

2. បើកសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ ខ្ញុំនឹងឃុំឃុំសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ

3. បើកសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ ខ្ញុំនឹងឃុំឃុំសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ

4. បើកសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ ខ្ញុំនឹងឃុំឃុំសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ

5. បើកសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ ខ្ញុំនឹងឃុំឃុំសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ

6. បើកសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ ខ្ញុំនឹងឃុំឃុំសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ

7. បើកសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ ខ្ញុំនឹងឃុំឃុំសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ

8. បើកសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ ខ្ញុំនឹងឃុំឃុំសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ

Drill I. Reduction

1. ខ្ញុំនឹងឃុំឃុំសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ ខ្ញុំនឹងឃុំឃុំសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ

2. ខ្ញុំនឹងឃុំឃុំសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ ខ្ញុំនឹងឃុំឃុំសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ

3. ខ្ញុំនឹងឃុំឃុំសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ ខ្ញុំនឹងឃុំឃុំសម្រួលបង្កើត និងចុងក្រោយ

I'm going to see Angkor Wat.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat in Cambodia.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat in Cambodia, but I want to get off in Hong Kong.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat in Cambodia, but I want to get off in Hong Kong for two or three days.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat in Cambodia, but I want to get off in Hong Kong for two or three days in order to buy a camera.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat in Cambodia, but I want to get off in Hong Kong for two or three days in order to buy a camera and have some clothes made.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat in Cambodia, but I want to get off in Hong Kong for 2 or 3 days in order to buy a camera and have some white clothes made.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat in Cambodia, but I want to get off in Hong Kong for 2 or 3 days in order to buy a camera and have two white suits made.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat in Cambodia, but I want to get off in Hong Kong for 2 or 3 days in order to buy a camera and have two white suits made.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat in Cambodia, but I want to get off in Hong Kong for 2 or 3 days in order to buy a camera and have some white clothes made.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat in Cambodia, but I want to get off in Hong Kong for 2 or 3 days in order to buy a camera and have some white clothes made.
Cambodia, but I want to get off in Hong Kong for two or three days in order to buy a camera and have some clothes made.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat in Cambodia, but I want to get off in Hong Kong for two or three days in order to buy a camera.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat in Cambodia, but I want to get off in Hong Kong for two or three days.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat in Cambodia. I want to get off in Hong Kong.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat.

I'm going to see Angkor Wat.
UNIT 77

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. តើសាស៊នមានសំណុំប្រយោជន៍មិន? ប្រយោជន៍មិនមាន នឹងបានទទួលមកប្រើប្រាស់ទេ?  
    John  
    Mr. San, are you busy tomorrow? If you're not busy can you go for a little while to help me buy some things?

2. តើណាកើតនេះ?  
    San  
    O. K. What do you want to buy?

3. ឈ្មោះតារអាហារមានអំពូលដែលមាន ក្រុមហ៊ុនមានអំពូលដែលមានដែលមានដូចគ្នា នេះ?  
    John  
    I want to go look for some silver or Cambodian cloth for a Cambodian sampot to send for the wedding of my younger sister.

4. ដែលមានអំពូលដែលមាន?  
    San  
    Oh, when's she getting married?

5. រ៏ ក្លាយស្វែងមកមិន?  
    John  
    Next month.

6. ប៉ុន្មានពេលមានអំពូលដែលមានអំពូលដែលមានប្រុងប្រាយ?  
    San  
    In that case we can go to two or three places, to the Old Market, to the New Market, or the Kossamak Hotel.

7. តើអំពូលដែលមាន?  
    John  
    Help me think of what to buy.

8. មានអំពូលដែលមានអំពូលដែលមានអំពូលដែលមានអំពូលដែលមានអំពូលដែលមានផ្សេងទៀត?  
    San  
    That's very hard to say, but when we go you will be able to see a lot of things, and you won't have any difficulty in choosing.
I've seen people buying very pretty silver boxes.

Yes, Cambodian silversmiths really know how to make beautiful designs. They make silver belts for women, powder boxes, necklaces and gold pendants in the shapes of various animals.

Do they make Cambodian dolls dressed in the national dress?

They do. They make them out of rubber, and out of copper. They even make different kinds such as the Royal Ballet, with dancers, apsaras, and the musical instruments, for example.

I can buy all these things for a wedding. As for sampots and sarongs, what kinds are there?

There are all kinds. There are somput houl, somput promuang, and small kramas in almost every color. All these things are made out of silk. If you want to buy ties for your friends, they have them for sale too. The ties are made of pretty silk.

Where do they make all these things?
16. There are a lot of private artisans who make a living this way, and the School of Fine Arts also makes a lot.

San

17. I can hardly wait. I want to go see right away.

John

18. All right. Tomorrow morning at ten o'clock come meet me.

San

19. O.K. I'll say goodbye now, and tomorrow we'll meet.

John
DRILLS

Drill A. Response

MODEL: ឈឺ: អាហារអាចការឹតសុីតសុីត់ឬ ការសុីតសុីត់?  (ឃុំសុីតសុីត់)

Teacher: Can you help me go shopping for a while tomorrow? (go out of town)

Student: Excuse me, tomorrow I won't be home. I have to go out of town.

1. អ្នកចេះឈឺសុីតសុីត់បេសាទសុីតសុីត់?  (ឃុំសុីតសុីត់)

2. អ្នកចេះឈឺទៅសុីតសុីត់?  (ឃុំសុីតសុីត់)

3. អ្នកចេះឈឺទៅសុីតសុីត់បេសាទសុីតសុីត់?  (ឃុំសុីតសុីត់)

Drill B. Response

MODEL: ឈឺ: អាហារអាចការឹតសុីតសុីត់?  (ឃុំសុីតសុីត់)

Teacher: What does he want to go buy? (buy silver and Cambodian sampots)

Student: He wants to go buy silver and Cambodian sampots.

1. អ្នកចេះឈឺទៅសុីតសុីត់បេសាទសុីតសុីត់?  (ឃុំសុីតសុីត់)

2. អ្នកចេះឈឺទៅសុីតសុីតសុីត់?  (ឃុំសុីតសុីត់)

3. អ្នកចេះឈឺទៅសុីតសុីត់?  (ឃុំសុីតសុីត់)

4. អ្នកចេះឈឺទៅសុីតសុីតសុីត់?  (ឃុំសុីតសុីត់)

5. អ្នកចេះឈឺទៅសុីតសុីតសុីតសុីត់?  (ឃុំសុីតសុីត់)

232
4. ដែលវិធីសំនួរកើត?  
(ដែលតើច្រើនប្រភេទកើតស្រាយទាំងអស់)

5. រូបការណ៍ជួយ?  
(រូបការណ៍ស្រាប់យើងប្រសិនបើបានជួយពីកុមារ)

Drill C. Response

MODEL: សម្រាប់ស្មាតហ្វ្រូត់ប្រព័ន្ធនេព្យូនា៏? (សម្រាប់ស្មាតហ្វ្រូត់ប្រព័ន្ធនេព្យូនា៏)  

Teacher: Do you know where the place they sell silver is? (Old Market near the palace)

Student: The place where they sell silver is at the Old Market near the palace.

Drill D. Transformation

MODEL: សម្រាប់ស្មាតហ្វ្រូត់ប្រព័ន្ធនេព្យូនា៏? (សម្រាប់ស្មាតហ្វ្រូត់ប្រព័ន្ធនេព្យូនា៏)  

Teacher: They sell silver belts for women, powder boxes, necklaces, and gold pendants.

Student: Besides gold pendants, you can buy silver belts for women, powder boxes and necklaces.
Drill E. Substitution

1. ដើរសកម្មៈមកដល់ក្រុងស៊ីន្ទៈ ក្នុងហិរញ្ញវត្ថុក្នុងប្រទេសកម្ពុជា។
   I bought all these things in Cambodia.

2. កាន់មកដល់ក្រុងស៊ីន្ទៈ និងក្នុងក្រុងស៊ីន្ទៈ ក្នុងហិរញ្ញវត្ថុក្នុងប្រទេសកម្ពុជា។
   I bought this table and wardrobe in Cambodia.

3. កាន់មកដល់ក្រុងស៊ីន្ទៈ ក្នុងហិរញ្ញវត្ថុនៃប្រភេទនៃមុខក្នុងប្រទេសកម្ពុជា។
   I bought this tie in Cambodia.

4. កាន់មកដល់ក្រុងស៊ីន្ទៈ ក្នុងហិរញ្ញវត្ថុនៃប្រភេទនៃមុខក្នុងប្រទេសកម្ពុជា។
   I bought this sarong in Cambodia.

5. កាន់មកដល់ក្រុងស៊ីន្ទៈ ក្នុងហិរញ្ញវត្ថុនៃប្រភេទនៃមុខក្នុងប្រទេសកម្ពុជា។
   This sarong was made in Cambodia.

6. កាន់មកដល់ក្រុងស៊ីន្ទៈ ក្នុងហិរញ្ញវត្ថុនៃប្រភេទនៃមុខក្នុងប្រទេសកម្ពុជា។
   This sculpture was made in Cambodia.

7. កាន់មកដល់ក្រុងស៊ីន្ទៈ ក្នុងហិរញ្ញវត្ថុនៃប្រភេទនៃមុខក្នុងប្រទេសកម្ពុជា។
   This Angkor automobile was made in Cambodia.

8. កាន់មកដល់ក្រុងស៊ីន្ទៈ ក្នុងហិរញ្ញវត្ថុនៃប្រភេទនៃមុខក្នុងប្រទេសកម្ពុជា។
   This chair was made in Cambodia.
Drill F. Multiple Substitution

1. ឃុនិត្យម៉ូតូបួនដូចគ្នា សម្រេចឈោ អនុញ្ញាតឱ្យ មកដល់។

2. ឃុនិត្យម៉ូតូបួនដូចគ្នានឹងការសម្រេចឈោ អនុញ្ញាតឱ្យ មកដល់។

3. ឃុនិត្យម៉ូតូបួនដូចគ្នានឹងការសម្រេចឈោ អនុញ្ញាតឱ្យ មកដល់។

4. ឃុនិត្យម៉ូតូបួនដូចគ្នានឹងការសម្រេចឈោ អនុញ្ញាតឱ្យ មកដល់។

5. ឃុនិត្យម៉ូតូបួនដូចគ្នានឹងការសម្រេចឈោ អនុញ្ញាតឱ្យ មកដល់។

6. ឃុនិត្យម៉ូតូបួនដូចគ្នានឹងការសម្រេចឈោ អនុញ្ញាតឱ្យ មកដល់។

7. ឃុនិត្យម៉ូតូបួនដូចគ្នានឹងការសម្រេចឈោ អនុញ្ញាតឱ្យ មកដល់។

I want to go to the market for an hour or two to try to find a shirt.
I want to go to the tailor shop for an hour or two to have a shirt made.
I want to go to the silver shop for an hour or two to buy a powder box for my wife.
I want to go to the New Market for an hour or two to buy a necklace for my older sister.
I want to go to the Cambodian Embassy for an hour or two to get a visa for my wife.
I want to go to the language school for an hour or two to register my wife's name.
I want to go to the Foreign Ministry for an hour or two to meet the Minister.

Drill G. Variable Multiple Substitution

1. អាហារទាំងអស្បៈ ស្រី។

All the sampots are made of silk.

2. អាហារទាំងអស្បៈ ស្រី។

All the shirts are made of cotton.

3. អាហារទាំងអស្បៈ ស្រី។

All the shirts are made of silk and cotton.

4. អាហារទាំងអស្បៈ ស្រី។

The cloth I saw is made of silk and cotton.

5. អាហារទាំងអស្បៈ ស្រី។

The cloth I saw is made of nylon.

6. អាហារទាំងអស្បៈ ស្រី។

I want to buy tires made of nylon.

7. អាហារទាំងអស្បៈ ស្រី។

I want to buy two new tires made of nylon.

8. អាហារទាំងអស្បៈ ស្រី។

I want to buy two pair of new pants made of nylon.

9. អាហារទាំងអស្បៈ ស្រី។

I just bought two pair of new pants made of nylon.
Drill H. Expansion

1. ការបញ្ជាក់អាចប្រឈម៖
2. ការបញ្ជាក់អាចប្រឈម៖
3. ការបញ្ជាក់អាចប្រឈម៖
4. ការបញ្ជាក់អាចប្រឈម៖
5. ការបញ្ជាក់អាចប្រឈម៖
6. ការបញ្ជាក់អាចប្រឈម៖
7. ការបញ្ជាក់អាចប្រឈម៖
8. ការបញ្ជាក់អាចប្រឈម៖

Come meet me tomorrow.

Please come meet me tomorrow.
Please come meet me tomorrow at 10 o'clock.
Please come meet me tomorrow at 10 o'clock in the morning.
Please come meet me tomorrow at 10 o'clock in the morning; then we'll go drink coffee.
Please come meet me tomorrow at 10 o'clock in the morning; then we'll go drink coffee at the Hotel Monorom.
Please come meet me tomorrow at 10 o'clock in the morning; then we'll go drink coffee at the Hotel Monorom, and remember, we'll go see a private school.
Please come meet me tomorrow at 10 o'clock in the morning; then we'll go drink coffee at the Hotel Monorom, and remember, we'll go see a private school and the School of Fine Arts.

Please come meet me tomorrow at 10 o'clock in the morning; then we'll go drink coffee at the Hotel Monorom, and remember, we'll go see a private school.

Please come meet me tomorrow at 10 o'clock in the morning; then we'll go drink coffee at the Hotel Monorom.
Please come meet me tomorrow at 10 o'clock in the morning; then we'll go drink coffee.
Please come meet me tomorrow at 10 o'clock in the morning.
Please come meet me tomorrow at 10 o'clock.
Please come meet me tomorrow.
Come meet me tomorrow.
UNIT 78

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. ឡើងនៅក្នុងសហរដ្ឋអាមេរិក នៅពេលណា អ្នកបានទិញក្រុមអូតូលាក្សមុខៗ? អ្នកបានទិញក្រុមអូតូលាក្សមុខៗ?
   John  Hello, Kon. When did you arrive in Washington?
   Kon  I arrived yesterday.

2. ពេលនេះ អ្នកក្លាត់ស្មោះទូរស័ព្ទ?
   John  Tell me, is there anything new in Phnom Penh?
   Kon  Now if you went to see Phnom Penh you'd certainly be surprised. They built new roads that are very good and the city is getting bigger and bigger.

3. អ្នកមិនអោយសិក្សាចារ្កិតបាននេះ អ្នកមិនអោយសិក្សាចារ្កិតបាននេះ
   John  I've seen pictures of pretty universities.
   Kon  Yes, since the Cambodians got their independence they have tried to build many schools and now they have almost more schools than teachers.

4. ក្លាត់ស្មោះទូរស័ព្ទជាមួយនឹងក្រុមអូតូលាក្សមុខៗ ក្លាត់ស្មោះទូរស័ព្ទជាមួយនឹងក្រុមអូតូលាក្សមុខៗ
   John  As for the various factories, how have they been established?
   Kon  In industry Cambodia is growing very strong. They have factories which make foodstuffs and make various necessary tools.
9. When I left Phnom Penh they had a cement factory, a plywood factory, a paper factory and sawmills.

10. Now the number of factories is increasing very much. They make alcohol, beer, canned food, and chinaware. They also assemble automobile and tractor bodies, make automobile tires, and refine kerosene and gasoline.

11. This is really praiseworthy. Do you know how many of all these factories come from foreign aid?

12. At present all the factories number 33. Of this number a third come from foreign aid. Aside from this there are state factories and private factories.

13. The factories which come from foreign aid: were they given without strings, or what?

14. Foreign aid doesn't mean that they give things without strings. That is, they help by loaning money with low interest, they sell equipment cheaply, or they send technicians to help supervise the work.
15. All this news makes me long to go to Phnom Penh. When I am transferred near Cambodia, I'll go meet other friends in Phnom Penh.
Drill A. Substitution

1. ពេញវត្តូវបញ្ចូលសារធាតុរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

In Phnom Penh they are expanding the streets, and they are clean too.

2. ពេញវត្តូវបញ្ចូលសារធាតុរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

In Phnom Penh they see the large streets, and they are clean too.

3. ពេញវត្តូវបញ្ចូលសារធាតុរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

In Phnom Penh they are making streets, and they are clean too.

4. ពេញវត្តូវបញ្ចូលសារធាតុរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

In Phnom Penh they have large streets, and they are clean too.

5. ពេញវត្តូវបញ្ចូលសារធាតុរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

In Phnom Penh I take a cyclo along large streets, and they are clean too.

6. ពេញវត្តូវបញ្ចូលសារធាតុរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

In Phnom Penh I go for a walk on the large streets, and they are clean too.

7. ពេញវត្តូវបញ្ចូលសារធាតុរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

In Phnom Penh they plant flowers along the large streets, and they are clean too.

8. ពេញវត្តូវបញ្ចូលសារធាតុរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

In Phnom Penh I drive along large streets, and they are clean too.

Drill B. Substitution

1. ជាក្នុងក្នុងការប្រកួតប្រជែងរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

Now Cambodia has sufficient schools.

2. ជាក្នុងក្នុងការប្រកួតប្រជែងរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

Now Cambodia has a lot of factories.

3. ជាក្នុងក្នុងការប្រកួតប្រជែងរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

Now Cambodia has a lot of large roads.

4. ជាក្នុងក្នុងការប្រកួតប្រជែងរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

Now every province has a lot of large roads.

5. ជាក្នុងក្នុងការប្រកួតប្រជែងរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

Now every province has one airfield.

6. ជាក្នុងក្នុងការប្រកួតប្រជែងរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

Now every province has one lycée at least.

7. ជាក្នុងក្នុងការប្រកួតប្រជែងរបស់អ្នកមកឈើអ៊ឹងតែ

Now every province has one university.
Drill C. Double Substitution

1. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   When I went to visit Cambodia, I went to see the rubber plantations and the tire factory.

2. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   When I was in Cambodia I went to look at the rubber plantations and the tire factory.

3. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   When I was in Phnom Penh I studied Cambodian and taught English.

4. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   When I was in Phnom Penh I went to see the palace and visited Angkor.

5. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   When I was in Washington I worked in the embassy and taught in the lyceum.

6. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   When I was in Washington I worked in the embassy and studied at the university.

7. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   When I was in Washington I worked and studied as well.

Drill D. Substitution

1. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   In every ministry there are a lot of workers.

2. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   In every factory there are a lot of workers.

3. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   In every school there are a lot of students.

4. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   In every school there are a lot of doctors.

5. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   In every barracks there are a lot of guns.

6. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   In every bus station there are a lot of travellers.

7. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   In every library there are a lot of books.

8. ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   In every room there are a lot of people.

Drill E. Response

MODEL: ដើម្បី ក្រុមរឿងស្មាតហ្វូនដែលពួកស្នេហារី ស្រែស្បែងជាមួយប្រឈមពេញ ពេលនេះ
   Teacher: After getting independence, was anything strange seen in Cambodia?

Student: After getting independence, they saw schools, factories, and hospitals.
Drill F. Response

MODEL:  

Student: Now they have factories that make cement, plywood, liquor and canned foods.

Teacher: Now what things do the factories make? (make cement, plywood, liquor and canned foods)
Drill G. Response

MODEL: តើពួកគេធ្វើអ្វីទៀតប.peek? (ដើម្បីធ្វើផ្ទះបូង)

Teacher: Do they make anything besides glasses? (dishes and vases)

Student: Besides (making) glasses they make dishes and vases too.

Drill H. Expansion with Substitution

MODEL: តើពួកគេធ្វើអ្វីទៀតប.peek? (ដើម្បីធ្វើផ្ទះបូង)

Teacher: When do you think they'll build that factory? (start to work)

Student: And what month will they start to work?

1. ជាមួយនៃការធ្វើអ្វីទៀតប.peek? (បញ្ចប់មុខទេ)

2. ជាមួយនៃការធ្វើអ្វីទៀតប.peek? (បញ្ចប់ស្តេចទេ)

3. ជាមួយនៃការធ្វើអ្វីទៀតប.peek? (បញ្ចប់បញ្ជាក់ទេ)

4. ជាមួយនៃការធ្វើអ្វីទៀតប.peek? (បញ្ចប់ក្មេងទេ)

5. ជាមួយនៃការធ្វើអ្វីទៀតប.peek? (បញ្ចប់ប្រាប់ទេ)
Drill I. Expansion

1. They have established many factories.

2. Since gaining independence they have established many factories in Cambodia.

3. They have established many factories in Cambodia.

4. They have established many factories in Cambodia which manufacture many kinds of important products.

5. Since gaining independence they have established many factories in Cambodia which manufacture many kinds of important products used for the needs of the people.

Drill J. Reduction

1. Since gaining independence they have established many factories in Cambodia which manufacture many kinds of important products used for the needs of the people.

2. Since gaining independence they have established many factories in Cambodia which manufacture many kinds of important products.

3. Since gaining independence they have established many factories in Cambodia.

4. They have established many factories in Cambodia.

5. They have established many factories.
UNIT 79
BASIC DIALOGUE

Nancy

Hello, Sroh. Can you give me a little suggestion?

Sroh

All right. What's the matter?

Nancy

I'm getting things ready to take to Phnom Penh. Can you tell me what I should take, and what I should leave behind?

Sroh

In this case, if you don't want a lot of trouble, take only a few things, like various appliances for use in the house.

Nancy

Like china and things like that?

Sroh

These things you don't need to take either, because in Phnom Penh they sell all these things and they're pretty too.

Nancy

Are they expensive?

Sroh

No. They sell them cheap because they have factories which make all these in the country.

Nancy

In that case it'll be convenient. I can have the transfer company put my things in storage in their warehouse.
10.  And when you arrive in Phnom Penh you should rent an apartment or a house with tables and chests and things like that.

Nancy

Can I rent an unfurnished apartment or house?

Sroh

Yes you can, and you can buy tables, chests and beds according to your desire. They make very good beds, tables, wardrobes and chairs. They have wardrobes made of good wood; they have foam-rubber mattresses; they have rattan chairs made in the modern or old style, or however you want.

Nancy

Do they sell gas stoves in Cambodia?

Sroh

Yes, they do. They burn gas or kerosene, but if you go to live in a house built for Americans, you needn't worry.

Nancy

No, I will go live in an apartment or "compartment house" which has all the tables and wardrobes in the Cambodian style, and I'll arrange it my own way.

Sroh

In that case you needn't take a lot, if that's the way you think. And I hope that your mission will end in success.

Nancy

Thank you very much.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. អ្នក អាចជួយរៀនបញ្ហារបស់ខ្ញុះបាន៖
   
2. អ្នក អាចជួយស្រួលបញ្ហារបស់ខ្ញុះ
   
3. អ្នក អាចជួយស្រួលបញ្ហារបស់ខ្ញុះ
   
4. អ្នក អាចជួយស្រួលបញ្ហារបស់ខ្ញុះ
   
5. អ្នក អាចជួយស្រួលបញ្ហារបស់ខ្ញុះ
   
6. អ្នក អាចជួយស្រួលបញ្ហារបស់ខ្ញុះ
   
7. អ្នក អាចជួយស្រួលបញ្ហារបស់ខ្ញុះ
   
8. អ្នក អាចជួយស្រួលបញ្ហារបស់ខ្ញុះ
   
   Excuse me, would you help me think a little bit.
   
   Excuse me, would you help me put the house in order a little bit.
   
   Excuse me, would you help me work a little bit.
   
   Excuse me, would you help me carry the things a little bit.
   
   Excuse me, would you help me prepare the things a little bit.
   
   Excuse me, would you help me call a cyclo a little bit.
   
   Excuse me, would you help me look after the children a little bit.
   
   Excuse me, would you help me buy books a little bit.

Drill B. Substitution

1. ក្រុមអ្នកមានការធ្វើសម្រាប់ការអំពីអ្វី?
   
2. ក្រុមអ្នកមានការអំពីអ្វី?
   
3. ក្រុមអ្នកមានការអំពីអ្វី?
   
4. ក្រុមអ្នកមានការអំពីអ្វី?
   
5. ក្រុមអ្នកមានការអំពីអ្វី?
   
6. ក្រុមអ្នកមានការអំពីអ្វី?
   
7. ក្រុមអ្នកមានការអំពីអ្វី?
   
8. ក្រុមអ្នកមានការអំពីអ្វី?
   
   Which store has gas stoves for sale?
   
   Which store has refrigerators for sale?
   
   Which store has good tires for sale?
   
   Which store has English books for sale?
   
   Which book store has English books for sale?
   
   Which book store has French newspapers and magazines for sale?
   
   Where are French newspapers and magazines for sale?
   
   Where are beds and wardrobes for sale?
Drill C. Substitution

1.  ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ដែលបានបម្រើប្រាស់បានពេញចិត្តៈ

2.  ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ដែលបានបម្រើប្រាស់បានពេញចិត្តៈ

3.  ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ដែលបានបម្រើប្រាស់បានពេញចិត្តៈ

4.  ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ដែលបានបម្រើប្រាស់បានពេញចិត្តៈ

5.  ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ដែលបានបម្រើប្រាស់បានពេញចិត្តៈ

6.  ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ដែលបានបម្រើប្រាស់បានពេញចិត្តៈ

7.  ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ដែលបានបម្រើប្រាស់បានពេញចិត្តៈ

8.  ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ដែលបានបម្រើប្រាស់បានពេញចិត្តៈ

Drill D. Multiple Substitution

1.  ឃ្លាំងពេញចិត្តៈ ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់នៅអតីតពេលញ្ចូល

2.  ឃ្លាំងពេញចិត្តៈ ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់នៅអតីតពេលញ្ចូល

3.  ឃ្លាំងពេញចិត្តៈ ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់នៅអតីតពេលញ្ចូល

4.  ឃ្លាំងពេញចិត្តៈ ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់នៅអតីតពេលញ្ចូល

5.  ឃ្លាំងពេញចិត្តៈ ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់នៅអតីតពេលញ្ចូល

6.  ឃ្លាំងពេញចិត្តៈ ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់នៅអតីតពេលញ្ចូល

7.  ឃ្លាំងពេញចិត្តៈ ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់នៅអតីតពេលញ្ចូល

8.  ឃ្លាំងពេញចិត្តៈ ក្រុមអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់នៅអតីតពេលញ្ចូល

You don't have to take things; they have many things to sell there.

You don't have to let him go; they have many people there.

You don't have to take the car; they have many cyclos there.

You don't have to send the book; they have many books for sale there.

You don't have to have a lot of clothes made; they have many tailors there.

You don't have to buy fruit to take along; they have many cake sellers there.

You don't have to go they have many workers there.

You don't have to telephone; they have many to sell there.

I will try to rent a "compartment house" near my place of work.

I will try to buy a "compartment house" far from where things are sold.

I will try to buy a piece of land far from the city.

I will try to buy a house near the embassy.

I will try to buy a car when I arrive.

I will try to rent a car when I'm in Phnom Penh.

I will try to rent a bicycle when I arrive in Angkor Wat.

I will try to rent a room when I
Drill E. Equivalence

1. ឈានមានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង

2. ការសន្តិសុខមានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង

3. ការសន្តិសុខមានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង

4. ការវាស់ទ្វី្ការកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង

5. ការសន្តិសុខមានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង

Drill F. Transformation

1. ឈានមានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង

2. ការសន្តិសុខមានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង

3. ការសន្តិសុខមានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង

4. ការវាស់ទ្វី្ការកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង

5. ការសន្តិសុខមានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង

Drill G. Response

MODEL: ឈានមានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង មានកំណើតស្ថានភាពដើមឆ្លង

Teacher: How come you're taking so many things? (things)

Student: No, these are just the things I need right away. The other things I'll buy in Phnom Penh.
Drill H. Response

MODEL: ប្រការបរិស្រាប់មនុស្សប្រការតំបន់ប្រការណាដែលបានរៀបចំអស់? (ប្រការបរិស្រាប់ដើម្បីរៀបចំ)

Teacher: Do you have a wardrobe at your house? (closets)

Student: I don't have one, but I do have closets.

1. ប្រការបរិស្រាប់មនុស្សប្រការតំបន់ប្រការណាដែលបានរៀបចំអស់? (ប្រការបរិស្រាប់ដើម្បីរៀបចំ)

Drill I. Expansion

1. មានប្រការបរិស្រាប់មនុស្សប្រការតំបន់ប្រការណាដែលបានរៀបចំអស់?

Teacher: There are factories.

Student: There are a lot of factories.

2. មានប្រការបរិស្រាប់មនុស្សប្រការតំបន់ប្រការណាដែលបានរៀបចំអស់?

Teacher: There are a lot of factories making utensils.

3. មានប្រការបរិស្រាប់មនុស្សប្រការតំបន់ប្រការណាដែលបានរៀបចំអស់?

Teacher: There are a lot of factories making various utensils.

4. មានប្រការបរិស្រាប់មនុស្សប្រការតំបន់ប្រការណាដែលបានរៀបចំអស់?

Teacher: There are a lot of factories making various utensils such as pots, glasses, and dishes.

5. មានប្រការបរិស្រាប់មនុស្សប្រការតំបន់ប្រការណាដែលបានរៀបចំអស់?

Teacher: There are a lot of factories making various utensils such as pots, glasses, and dishes of excellent quality.

6. មានប្រការបរិស្រាប់មនុស្សប្រការតំបន់ប្រការណាដែលបានរៀបចំអស់?

Teacher: There are a lot of factories making various utensils such as pots, glasses, and dishes of excellent quality unsurpassed by foreign products.

7. មានប្រការបរិស្រាប់មនុស្សប្រការតំបន់ប្រការណាដែលបានរៀបចំអស់?

Teacher: There are a lot of factories making various utensils such as pots, glasses, and dishes of excellent quality unsurpassed by foreign products.
Drill J. Reduction

1. There are a lot of factories making various utensils such as pots, glasses, and dishes of excellent quality unsurpassed by foreign products.

2. There are a lot of factories making various utensils such as pots, glasses, and dishes of excellent quality.

3. There are a lot of factories making various utensils such as pots, glasses, and dishes.

4. There are a lot of factories making various utensils.

5. There are a lot of factories making utensils.

6. There are a lot of factories.

7. There are factories.
UNIT 80

NARRATION

1. Paul is a tourist among other tourists who have gone to visit Cambodia.

2. He still has not had the opportunity to go look for a single Cambodian friend.

3. He came from Rangoon directly to Siem Reap.

4. There he had the opportunity to go see Angkor Wat for a whole week.

5. Paul went to see many different monuments and he likes Banteay Srey very much because the sculptures are still very pretty.

6. Along the walls of Angkor he also saw that the sculpture is beautiful, and smooth too, because whoever goes to see it always touches and rubs it.

7. Paul constantly wonders how the ancient Khmer could build Angkor because he sees stones placed one on top of the other without even having cement.

8. Now the Cambodian Tourist Office has brought him to Phnom Penh.

9. Here he can go see various places, the National Museum and the Palace, for example.

10. Tomorrow he will go to see the Preah Keo Pagoda, in which the floor is completely tiled in silver, and he will see the Independence Monument, which has been decorated by mixing the ancient with the modern.
1. In Phnom Penh it is not difficult to buy silver articles, sampot cloth, or various sculptures.

2. Besides the other small businesses, they can go look in four large places, the Old Market, the New Market, the Kossamak Hotel, and the salesroom of the School of Fine Arts.

3. They can buy silver boxes, sampot houl, sarongs, or silk ties.

4. There are a lot of various carvings made of ivory, copper, and wood.

5. Besides all these things they can buy silver belts for ladies, compacts, gold necklaces and pendants made in the shapes of various animals.

6. They offer for sale small sculptures such as apsaras and Cambodian orchestras, for example.

7. If they want to go buy all these things in the School of Fine Arts they can go watch the sculptors or the weavers.

8. All these people are students until the time they have finished studying and leave to be private artisans.
1. Since Cambodia became independent, Phnom Penh, like other Cambodian cities, has constantly been active in keeping itself clean.

2. They are expanding the main roads and enlarging the cities also.

3. The number of universities is getting larger and larger, and other roads are also expanding almost everywhere.

4. In the soks and villages they are building schools so as to have enough, and in Phnom Penh and some provinces they are establishing universities.

5. As for health, they have a number of pharmacies, health centers, and hospitals even in the remote villages.

6. In industry, Cambodia has also made quick strides.

7. At present they have factories making various equipment of almost all kinds.

8. Among these factories, one third are foreign aid.

9. Besides that there are state and private factories.

10. This expansion would surprise people who knew Cambodia before.
1. A lady who is preparing to go to work in Phnom Penh asks what things she must take.

2. A Cambodian tells her that she needn’t take a lot of things; taking them would only make things difficult.

3. The lady can take clothes for the hot months and some other things which are necessities.

4. She needn’t take dishes and various pots because they have all these things; they’re nice and they’re cheap too.

5. In Cambodia they have factories which make all these things, which are not inferior to foreign products.

6. If the lady is going to rent a house which already has furniture, so much the easier.

7. They have tables and cabinets made from good wood; they have mattresses and chairs made of foam rubber in both the modern and ancient style, and there are a lot of them.

8. If the lady goes to live in a house only for American officials it would be very easy, because they have many appliances installed in each house or apartment.

9. If she wants to rent an apartment or a 'compartment house' which doesn’t have furniture, she can fix up the house as she wishes.

10. Thus, she can fix up the house in the Cambodian style or specially in the American style.
UNIT 81

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. ¿Cómo estás hoy? ¿Qué haces?
   
   John

   Hello, Sarom. Where are you going?

2. ¿Vas a casa hoy?
   
   Sarom

   I'm going home. I'm just returning from the airport.

3. ¿Has visto a alguien?
   
   John

   Did you meet someone?

4. ¿Qué hicieron en el aeropuerto?
   
   Sarom

   No, I took my younger brother to get a plane.

5. ¿Es eso verdad? ¿Qué estás haciendo?
   
   John

   Is that so? What's he going to study?

   
   Sarom

   He's going to study engineering at Cornell.

7. ¿Cuánto tiempo va a estar?
   
   John

   How many years is he going to study?

8. Va a estudiar durante un año, pero si estudia bien se extenderá el beca.
   
   Sarom

   He got a scholarship for just one year, but if he studies well they will extend the scholarship.

9. ¿Hay universidades en Camboya?
   
   John

   Are there universities in Cambodia?

10. Sí, en Phnom Penh, Kompong Cham y Battambang, pero estudiantes que reciben las becas estudian en el extranjero, los medios de estudio que no tenemos.
    
    Sarom

   Yes, in Phnom Penh, Kompong Cham and Battambang, but students who get scholarships go abroad to study subjects which we don't have yet.
11.  How many universities are there altogether in Cambodia?

Sarom

There are eight now. Six in Phnom Penh and two others, in Kompong Cham and Battambang.

12.  Are there foreign students in all these universities?

Sarom

Yes, mostly they come from Laos, Vietnam, and some from France.

13.  What do they come to study?

Sarom

For the most part they study economics, law, medicine, agriculture, and various technical subjects, such as repairing autos and tailoring.

14.  Are the schools in Cambodia expensive?

Sarom

They're not expensive. Almost all the schools are government schools. They charge just according to the price of taking the exam and the diploma. It costs from 100 to 500 riels a year.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. ដើម្បីកើតមកពីស្រលាញ់។
   I just came back from the market.

2. ដើម្បីកើតមកពីអូរក្តី។
   I just came back from the airport.

3. ដើម្បីកើតមកពីសាលារៀន។
   I just came back from the school.

4. ដើម្បីកើតមកពីប្រពន្ធវេស្រមាស។
   I just came back from work.

5. ដើម្បីកើតមកពីស្នើសុំសម្លាប់។
   I just came back from getting a haircut.

6. ដើម្បីកើតមកពីសូម្រែង។
   I just came back from the bookstore.

7. ដើម្បីកើតមកពីរាល់ដង្ខោស។
   I just came back from the railroad station.

8. ដើម្បីកើតមកពីការពោត។
   I just came back from the hospital.

Drill B. Substitution

1. ខ្ញុំកើតមកពីសន្លឹកស្រីនឹងប្រការឯកជន។
   I study both law and economics.

2. ខ្ញុំកើតមកពីប្រការឯកជនអំពីប្រទេស។
   I study both law and history.

3. ខ្ញុំកើតមកពីប្រការឯកជនអំពីរឿងចម្រៀង។
   I study both law and philosophy.

4. ខ្ញុំកើតមកពីប្រការឯកជនអំពីរឿងប្រមូល។
   I study both law and commerce.

5. ខ្ញុំកើតមកពីសាលាអារម្មណ៍។
   I study both law and mathematics.

6. ខ្ញុំកើតមកពីសាលាប្រសាទ។
   I study both law and medicine.

7. ខ្ញុំកើតមកពីសាលាអារម្មណ៍ក្នុងរយៈពេល។
   I study both law and engineering.

8. ខ្ញុំកើតមកពីសាលាអារម្មណ៍ក្នុងសារធាតុ។
   I study both law and geography.

Drill C. Variable Substitution

1. សាលាកម្មវិធីសាស្រ្តចាប់ផ្តើមមកពីសាលាសាស្រ្ត។
   Universities in Cambodia are not expensive because they are state schools.

2. សាលាប្រការឯកជនមកពីសាលាសាស្រ្ត។
   Some lycées in Cambodia are not expensive because they are state schools.

3. សាលាប្រការឯកជនមកពីសាលាឨ្យមាន។
   Some lycées in Phnom Penh are not expensive because they are state schools.

4. សាលាប្រការឯកជនមកពីសាលាប្រការឯកជន។
   Some lycées in the provinces are not expensive because they are state schools.

5. សាលាប្រការឯកជនមកពីសាលាប្រការឯកជន។
   Some lycées in the provinces are
Drill D. Double Substitution

1.  ការបានសរសេរកូរ៉ែរដោយគេហទំព័រ៖  
   វីញថ្នាំរបស់ខ្ញុះមានការសិក្សាជាច្រើន  
   ញេវភពវិញ ៖  
   He got a scholarship to study agriculture.

2.  ការបានសរសេរកូរ៉ែរដោយគេហទំព័រ៖  
   ការបង្កើតការសិក្សាជាច្រើន  
   ញេវភពវិញ ៖  
   He got help to study technology.

3.  ការបានសរសេរកូរ៉ែរដោយគេហទំព័រ៖  
   ការបង្កើតការសិក្សាជាច្រើន  
   ញេវភពវិញ ៖  
   He got some money to study foreign languages.

4.  ការបានសរសេរកូរ៉ែរដោយគេហទំព័រ៖  
   ការបង្កើតការសិក្សាជាច្រើន  
   ញេវភពវិញ ៖  
   He was helped by them to study engineering.

5.  ការបានសរសេរកូរ៉ែរដោយគេហទំព័រ៖  
   ការបង្កើតការសិក្សាជាច្រើន  
   ញេវភពវិញ ៖  
   He was helped by the government to study economics.

6.  ការបានសរសេរកូរ៉ែរដោយគេហទំព័រ៖  
   ការបង្កើតការសិក្សាជាច្រើន  
   ញេវភពវិញ ៖  
   He earned money to study mathematics.

7.  ការបានសរសេរកូរ៉ែរដោយគេហទំព័រ៖  
   ការបង្កើតការសិក្សាជាច្រើន  
   ញេវភពវិញ ៖  
   He got a scholarship to study political science.

Drill E. Triple Substitution

1.  ការបានសរសេរកូរ៉ែរដោយគេហទំព័រ៖  
   ការបង្កើតការសិក្សាជាច្រើន  
   ញេវភពវិញ ៖  
   In Cambodia, schools are almost all state schools.

2.  ការបានសរសេរកូរ៉ែរដោយគេហទំព័រ៖  
   ការបង្កើតការសិក្សាជាច្រើន  
   ញេវភពវិញ ៖  
   In America, factories are almost all private factories.

3.  ការបានសរសេរកូរ៉ែរដោយគេហទំព័រ៖  
   ការបង្កើតការសិក្សាជាច្រើន  
   ញេវភពវិញ ៖  
   In France, cars are almost all small cars.

4.  ការបានសរសេរកូរ៉ែរដោយគេហទំព័រ៖  
   ការបង្កើតការសិក្សាជាច្រើន  
   ញេវភពវិញ ៖  
   In Vietnam, roads are almost all ba
roads.

In Japan, cars are almost all made there.

In Thailand, cars are almost all English cars.

In Laos, villages are almost all small villages.

In Cambodia, cities are almost all pretty cities.

Drill F. Response

MODEL: គឺ? សាកល្បងប្រចាំថ្ងៃធ្វើឱ្យ កាត់បានទេ? ត្រូវបានស្លាប់ពីថា ត្រូវបានស្លាប់ពីថា ត្រូវបានស្លាប់ពីថា ត្រូវបានស្លាប់ពីថា

1. ដើម្បីអាចទស្សនាដល័ត្រ ជំនួយបានទេ? (តាមរយៈការប្រឈមការអាហារ)

2. ប្រការអាវធ្វើឱ្យ? (ផ្ទុកស្រុកជីវិត)

3. ខ្ញុំស្រីបានក្លាយចិត្ត បានទេ? (ប្រឈមការាំងជីវិត)

4. កើតកម្រការទេ? (ផ្ទុកស្រុកជីវិត)

5. កើតកម្រការទេ? (ប្រឈមការាំងជីវិត)

Teacher: Are schools in Cambodia expensive? (state schools)

Student: No, they're not expensive, because they're state schools.

Drill G. Response

MODEL: ខ្ញុំមិនដើម្បីក្លាយជាផ្លូវការអាចទស្សនាសាស្ត្រជាតិ។ ខ្ញុំទទួលទៅក្នុងរដ្ឋអាស៊ីតននា។

Teacher: Do foreign students go to study in Cambodia? (Lao, Vietnamese, and French, for example)

Student: Foreign students who study in Cambodian universities are Lao,
1. តើតាមរយៈប្រឈានមាត់ការស្វែងរក ប្រការអារម្មណ៍ប្រហែលជំនួយរបស់អ្នក? (ជាគោល អន្តរការបន្ថែមនេះ)

2. តើមានអ្នកគ្នាទៅជាអ្នកស្សែន៍អំពីការស្វែងរក ប្រការអារម្មណ៍ផ្សេងៗទៀតរៀងមក? (យោងតាមប្រភេទប្រហែលជំនួយ)

3. តើអ្នកធ្វើអ្វីបន្តនៅពេលប្រការចុងក្រោយ? (អំពីការបន្ថែមនេះ)

4. តើការប្រឈានអោយអ្នកប្រការអារម្មណ៍ប្រហែលជំនួយ ប្រហែលជាហេតុអ្វី? (យោងតាមប្រភេទឬសំរាប់ចុងក្រោយ)

5. តើអ្នកធ្វើអ្វីបន្តនៅពេលប្រការដំបូង? (អំពីការបន្ថែមនេះ)

Drill H. Response

MODEL: ឆ្លាស់: រឿងពាក្យស្តាប់ខ្លួនធាតុ ខ្លួន? (សូមទៅកាន់ឈូរក្រាប) បែងស៊ី: ការគ្នាស្របរហិតនេះ បង្កើតកិច្ចការប្រការអារម្មណ៍ នឹងមានការយល់ដឹងពីការរៀប រាប់រៀងផងដែរ

1. ប្រការអារម្មណ៍ឆ្លាស់ជាងបំផុត
   (អំពីការបន្ថែមនេះ)

2. ប្រការអារម្មណ៍ខ្លួនធាតុខ្លួន
   (អំពីការបន្ថែមនេះ)

3. ការប្រឈានអោយអ្នកប្រការអារម្មណ៍ផ្សេងៗ
   (អំពីការបន្ថែមនេះ)

4. ប្រការអារម្មណ៍ខ្លួនធាតុខ្លួន
   (អំពីការបន្ថែមនេះ)

5. ការប្រឈានអោយអ្នកប្រការអារម្មណ៍ផ្សេងៗ
   (អំពីការបន្ថែមនេះ)

Teacher: រឿងពាក្យស្តាប់ខ្លួនធាតុ ខ្លួន? (សូមទៅកាន់ឈូរក្រាប)

Student: រឿងពាក្យស្តាប់ខ្លួនធាតុ ខ្លួន? (សូមទៅកាន់ឈូរក្រាប)
Drill I. Expansion

1. ឃើញសុំស្រុកចុងក្រោយ
   I got a scholarship.

2. ឃើញសុំស្រុកចុងក្រោយប្រការីបរិញ្ឹ្ឈោត
   I got a scholarship from the government.

3. ឃើញសុំស្រុកចុងក្រោយប្រការីបរិញ្ឹ្ឈោត
   I got a scholarship from the Cambodian government.

4. ឃើញសុំស្រុកចុងក្រោយប្រការីបរិញ្ឹ្ឈោត
   Now I have a scholarship from the Cambodian government.

5. ឃើញសុំស្រុកចុងក្រោយប្រការីបរិញ្ឹ្ឈោត
   Now I have a scholarship from the Cambodian government to go study agriculture.

6. ឃើញសុំស្រុកចុងក្រោយប្រការីបរិញ្ឹ្ឈោត
   Now I have a scholarship from the Cambodian government to go study agriculture at the University of Paris.

Drill J. Reduction

1. ឃើញសុំស្រុកចុងក្រោយប្រការីបរិញ្ឹ្ឈោត
   Now I have a scholarship from the Cambodian government to go study agriculture.

2. ឃើញសុំស្រុកចុងក្រោយប្រការីបរិញ្ឹ្ឈោត
   Now I have a scholarship from the Cambodian government.

3. ឃើញសុំស្រុកចុងក្រោយប្រការីបរិញ្ឹ្ឈោត
   I got a scholarship from the Cambodian government.

4. ឃើញសុំស្រុកចុងក្រោយប្រការីបរិញ្ឹ្ឈោត
   I got a scholarship.

5. ឃើញសុំស្រុកចុងក្រោយប្រការីបរិញ្ឹ្ឈោត
   I got a scholarship from the government.

6. ឃើញសុំស្រុកចុងក្រោយប្រការីបរិញ្ឹ្ឈោត
   I got a scholarship.
UNIT 82

BASIC DIALOGUE

John

Cambodian students who go abroad to continue studying in their field go to which countries?

Sarom

Usually they like to go to study in France, because they already know French.

But besides France, there are some students who get scholarships to go and study in various countries such as Japan, Germany, Russia, China, and England.

John

What is the system of study like in Cambodia?

Sarom

They study in elementary schools for six years, and after this they study in middle school or the lycée for seven years.

Before, in the elementary section they could take a test and get an elementary certificate at the end of the sixth year.

Now they don’t take a test, because they have stopped accepting the the elementary certificate when people look for work.

When they study and get good grades, they can go to a lycée or junior high.
9.  In the lycée they take a test for a diploma three times. That is, in the fourth year, the sixth and the seventh.

10. At the end of four years, they take the test for the middle diploma and at the end of the sixth year and seventh year they take a test for parts 1 and 2 of the baccalaureat.

11. When they finish studying in the middle school they can go look for work.

12. Any student who wants to continue can choose to take various subjects at the university in order to prepare himself as an expert for the future.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. Do you usually like to play basketball?
   川�̃ អ្នកបានត្រូវបានប្រើប្រាស់ដោយ ចាប់ផ្តើមឲ្យអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ ស្រូបបានមានទូលំទូលាយរួមផ្សេងទៀត៖ ប្រើប្រាស់ក្នុងការប្រើប្រាស់របស់អ្នក ខោនគីតនៃអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់អ្នក ចាប់ផ្តើមឲ្យអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ប្រឹក្សារៀងរាល់ថ្ងៃ?

2. Do you usually like to go rowing?
   川�̃ អ្នកបានត្រូវបានប្រើប្រាស់ដោយ ចាប់ផ្តើមឲ្យអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ ស្រូបបានមានទូលំទូលាយរួមផ្សេងទៀត៖ ប្រើប្រាស់ក្នុងការប្រើប្រាស់របស់អ្នក ខោនគីតនៃអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់អ្នក ចាប់ផ្តើមឲ្យអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ គឺបានសូម្រួលក្នុងការប្រើប្រាស់របស់អ្នក មានទីតាំងជាមួយនឹងទីតាំងរបស់អ្នក នៅពេលដែលអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់របស់អ្នក ចាប់ផ្តើមឲ្យអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ប្រឹក្សារៀងរាល់ថ្ងៃ?

Drill B. Substitution

1. I used to go to that school when I was still young.
   បានប្រើប្រាស់ជាមួយរួមក្នុងការប្រើប្រាស់របស់អ្នក ខោនគីតនៃអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់អ្នក ចាប់ផ្តើមឲ្យអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ប្រឹក្សារៀងរាល់ថ្ងៃ?

2. I used to go to that lycee when I was still young.
   បានប្រើប្រាស់ជាមួយរួមក្នុងការប្រើប្រាស់របស់អ្នក ខោនគីតនៃអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់អ្នក ចាប់ផ្តើមឲ្យអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ប្រឹក្សារៀងរាល់ថ្ងៃ?

3. I used to go to that university when I was still young.
   បានប្រើប្រាស់ជាមួយរួមក្នុងការប្រើប្រាស់របស់អ្នក ខោនគីតនៃអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់អ្នក ចាប់ផ្តើមឲ្យអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ប្រឹក្សារៀងរាល់ថ្ងៃ?

4. I used to go to that wat when I was still young.
   បានប្រើប្រាស់ជាមួយរួមក្នុងការប្រើប្រាស់របស់អ្នក ខោនគីតនៃអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់អ្នក ចាប់ផ្តើមឲ្យអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ប្រឹក្សារៀងរាល់ថ្ងៃ?

5. I used to go to that foreign language school when I was still young.
   បានប្រើប្រាស់ជាមួយរួមក្នុងការប្រើប្រាស់របស់អ្នក ខោនគីតនៃអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់អ្នក ចាប់ផ្តើមឲ្យអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ប្រឹក្សារៀងរាល់ថ្ងៃ?

6. I used to go teach at that foreign language school when I was still young.
   បានប្រើប្រាស់ជាមួយរួមក្នុងការប្រើប្រាស់របស់អ្នក ខោនគីតនៃអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់អ្នក ចាប់ផ្តើមឲ្យអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ប្រឹក្សារៀងរាល់ថ្ងៃ?

7. I used to go to work at that foreign language school when I was still young.
   បានប្រើប្រាស់ជាមួយរួមក្នុងការប្រើប្រាស់របស់អ្នក ខោនគីតនៃអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់អ្នក ចាប់ផ្តើមឲ្យអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ប្រឹក្សារៀងរាល់ថ្ងៃ?

8. I used to listen to them teaching at that foreign language school when I was still young.
   បានប្រើប្រាស់ជាមួយរួមក្នុងការប្រើប្រាស់របស់អ្នក ខោនគីតនៃអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់អ្នក ចាប់ផ្តើមឲ្យអ្នកប្រើប្រាស់ប្រឹក្សារៀងរាល់ថ្ងៃ?
Drill C. Double Substitution

1. After having studied in elementary school for six years, I went to study in the middle school.

2. After having studied in the lycée for six years, I went to study in the university.

3. After having studied technology for six years, I left to go to work.

4. After having studied economics for six years, I got an advanced degree.

5. After having been a soldier for six years, I went back to school again.

6. After having worked in the Foreign Ministry for six years, I left to study law.

7. After having studied Cambodian for six years, I became an expert in Cambodian.

8. After having lived abroad for six years, I forgot most of my French.

---

Drill D. Multiple Substitution

1. At the end of the fourth year of lycée they have to take a test for the middle diploma (certificate).

2. At the end of the fourth year of the university they can take a test for the Bachelor's degree.

3. At the end of the sixth year of the university they can take a test for the Master's degree.

4. At the end of the first year of the university they can't take a test for any degree at all.

5. At the end of the fifth year at the university they can take the test for the Master's degree.
At the end of the third year at the university they can take the test for a degree.

**Teacher:** Do students who receive scholarships only go to France or to other countries? (America, Canada, and Japan)

**Student:** Students who receive scholarships go to France and other countries such as America, Canada, and Japan.
Drill F. Response

MODEL: តើ អតីតសម្រាប់ប្រការប្រការទេ? (អាចពីការាដោយ)

Teacher:  Do they have to take an examination to get in this year?

Student: As far as I know they don’t have to take a test because there are few candidates this year.

Drill G. Response

MODEL: តើ ការសិក្សាតម្រូវការសិក្សារៈ ឥឡូវនេះតែឬ? (ស្រោះថ្មីក្នុងវេទ)

Teacher: When you have studied and gotten your middle certificate, what do you plan to do? (go study economics)

Student: When I have studied and gotten my middle certificate, I will go study economics.
Drill H. **Expansion**

1. ការបង្កើតឈ្មោះក្រុមហ៊ុន នឹង ។

2. ការបង្កើតឈ្មោះក្រុមហ៊ុននឹង ។

3. ការបង្កើតឈ្មោះក្រុមហ៊ុននឹង ។

4. ការបង្កើតឈ្មោះក្រុមហ៊ុននឹង ។

5. ការបង្កើតឈ្មោះក្រុមហ៊ុននឹង ។

---

There are schools in Cambodia.

These days there are schools in Cambodia.

These days there are sufficient schools in Cambodia.

These days there are sufficient schools in Cambodia and a number of people who are illiterate.

These days there are sufficient schools in Cambodia and quite a number of people who are illiterate.

These days there are sufficient schools in Cambodia, and at the most two percent of the people are illiterate.

These days there are sufficient schools in Cambodia, and at the most only two percent of the people are illiterate.
Drill I. Reduction

1. ងារដែលមានសមត្ថភាពជាងគំនិត និងមានបញ្ហារបស់ការសិក្សាចងៀ អាចប្រការបានទេ ដែលមានបញ្ហារបស់ការសិក្សាចងៀ

2. ងារដែលមានសមត្ថភាពជាងគំនិត និងមានបញ្ហារបស់ការសិក្សាចងៀ អាចប្រការបានទេ ដែលមានបញ្ហារបស់ការសិក្សាចងៀ

3. ងារដែលមានសមត្ថភាពជាងគំនិត និងមានបញ្ហារបស់ការសិក្សាចងៀ អាចប្រការបានទេ ដែលមានបញ្ហារបស់ការសិក្សាចងៀ

4. ងារដែលមានសមត្ថភាពជាងគំនិត និងមានបញ្ហារបស់ការសិក្សាចងៀ អាចប្រការបានទេ ដែលមានបញ្ហារបស់ការសិក្សាចងៀ

5. These days there are sufficient schools in Cambodia, and at the most only two percent of the people are illiterate.

6. These days there are sufficient schools in Cambodia and quite a number of people who are illiterate.

7. These days there are sufficient schools in Cambodia.

There are schools in Cambodia.
UNIT 83

BASIC DIALOGUE

John

As I see it, the system of education in Cambodia is not different from that in France.

Sarom

Right. They have to take a test for the various diplomas in the year that they finish the education program.

John

Do they finish the education program once a year?

Sarom

Yes, you can say that, because in each year they have one program for the classes that are at the same level.

John

Can you give me an example?

Sarom

Yes. For example, students studying in the second class of the high school or the lycée all have the same program.

John

But in order to pass up to the first class they don't have to take a test. They have to study to get good marks. If they don't get them they have to study the same class for another year.

I understand. They take an exam for a diploma when they finish studying each level. For example, they take an examination for the middle
That’s it. And you know, students who study well can ask to take the examination for a diploma outside the scheduled time.

If they pass they gain a year.

That’s right, and they skip one class to go on to study in a higher class.

Are there a lot of students who skip a class?

Each year there are always some. Good students usually (go) take the test.

Some students try to study in a private school during vacation in order to get better or in order to finish the educational program and take the test.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. មិនបង្កើតឱ្យយើងប្រការសម្រាប់ I guess they are studying today.
    ជាមួយគ្នាជាមួយគ្នា

2. អរកូន្លាចុងព្រេវ I guess he'll arrive tomorrow.
    នៅក្នុងសាលាបឋមវិទ្យាល័យ

3. ប្រការសម្រាប់មិនបង្កើតឱ្យយើង I guess it'll rain without fail today.
    ជាមួយគ្នា

4. ប្រការសម្រាប់អក្សរបរ I guess he has forgotten.
    នៅក្នុងសាលាបឋមវិទ្យាល័យ

5. ប្រការសម្រាប់អក្សរបរ I guess they're going together to the wet.
    នៅក្នុងសាលាបឋមវិទ្យាល័យ

6. អក្សរបរ I guess I must go.
    នៅក្នុងសាលាបឋមវិទ្យាល័យ

7. ប្រការសម្រាប់អក្សរបរ I guess my wife didn't go.
    នៅក្នុងសាលាបឋមវិទ្យាល័យ

8. ប្រការសម្រាប់អក្សរបរ I guess I'll have to arrive Friday.
    នៅក្នុងសាលាបឋមវិទ្យាល័យ

Drill B. Substitution

1. ប្រការសម្រាប់អក្សរបរ What is the program of study in that lycée?
    នៅក្នុងសាលាបឋមវិទ្យាល័យ

2. អក្សរបរ What is the program of study in that school?
    នៅក្នុងសាលាបឋមវិទ្យាល័យ

3. អក្សរបរ What is the program of study at FSI?
    នៅក្នុងសាលាបឋមវិទ្យាល័យ

4. អក្សរបរ What is the program of study in that American school?
    នៅក្នុងសាលាបឋមវិទ្យាល័យ

5. អក្សរបរ What is the program of study in that Cambodian school?
    នៅក្នុងសាលាបឋមវិទ្យាល័យ

6. អក្សរបរ What is the program of study in that university?
    នៅក្នុងសាលាបឋមវិទ្យាល័យ

7. អក្សរបរ What is the program of study in that military school?
    នៅក្នុងសាលាបឋមវិទ្យាល័យ

8. អក្សរបរ What is the program of study in that private school?
    នៅក្នុងសាលាបឋមវិទ្យាល័យ

Drill C. Unpredictable Multiple Substitution

1. មិនបង្កើតឱ្យយើងប្រការសម្រាប់ The majority of pupils who study
    ជាមួយគ្នាជាមួយគ្នា and get the middle certificate
for the most part continue to study various subjects.
The majority of students who study in the university for the most part continue to study various subjects.

The majority of government officials who study in the university for the most part take the Bachelor's degree in various subjects.

The majority of monks who study in the university for the most part study religion, but others study various subjects.

The majority of students who study at FSI for the most part study foreign languages.

The majority of soldiers who study at FSI for the most part study Vietnamese.

The majority of teachers who study at the university for the most part study for advanced degrees.

The majority of foreign students who study at the university for the most part study for the Bachelor's degree.

Drill D. Double Substitution

1. ទំព័រព្រ័ន្ធរបស់ប្រទេសទីបីសម្រាប់ការបង្កើតព័រព្រ័ន្ធរបស់ប្រទេសទីបី។
   Every year they establish a new program for the third class.

2. ទំព័រព្រ័ន្ធរបស់ប្រទេសទីបីសម្រាប់ការស្តុកព័រព្រ័ន្ធរបស់ប្រទេសទីបី។
   Every year they build a new school for the twelfth class.

3. ទំព័រព្រ័ន្ធរបស់ប្រទេសទីបីសម្រាប់ការស្តុកព័រព្រ័ន្ធរបស់ប្រទេសទីបី។
   Every month they arrange (prepare) a new room for the twelfth class.

4. ទំព័រព្រ័ន្ធរបស់ប្រទេសទីបីសម្រាប់ការស្តុកព័រព្រ័ន្ធរបស់ប្រទេសទីបី។
   Every month they have to repair the classroom for the 6th class.

5. ទំព័រព្រ័ន្ធរបស់ប្រទេសទីបីសម្រាប់ការស្តុកព័រព្រ័ន្ធរបស់ប្រទេសទីបី។
   Every week they change the teacher.
Drill E. Double Substitution

1. អាកាសធាត្រូវបានបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សា យ៉ាងណាមួយៗ
2. អាកាសធាត្រូវបានបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សា យ៉ាងខ្មែរ
3. អាកាសធាត្រូវបានបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សា យ៉ាងខ្មែរ ប៉ុន្តែមានការបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សា
4. អាកាសធាត្រូវបានបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សា យ៉ាងខ្មែរ ប៉ុន្តែមានការបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សា
5. អាកាសធាត្រូវបានបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សា យ៉ាងខ្មែរ ប៉ុន្តែមានការបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សា
6. អាកាសធាត្រូវបានបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សា យ៉ាងខ្មែរ ប៉ុន្តែមានការបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សា
7. អាកាសធាត្រូវបានបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សា យ៉ាងខ្មែរ ប៉ុន្តែមានការបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សា
8. អាកាសធាត្រូវបានបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សា យ៉ាងខ្មែរ ប៉ុន្តែមានការបញ្ចប់ការសិក្សា

Drill F. Response

MODEL: ខ្មែរ: ប្រាប់តាមលំដាប់ មានបញ្ហាជាចិត្ត? (ដោយប្រាប់ការសិក្សាជាចិត្តបំផុត)

1. ប្រាប់តាមលំដាប់ មានបញ្ហាជាចិត្ត? (ដោយប្រាប់ការសិក្សាជាចិត្តបំផុត)
2. ប្រាប់តាមលំដាប់ មានបញ្ហាជាចិត្ត? (ដោយប្រាប់ការសិក្សាជាចិត្តបំផុត)

Teacher: What is the method of teaching in Cambodia? (almost the same as the method of teaching in France)

Student: The method of teaching in Cambodia is almost the same as the method of teaching in France.
3. រកឃើញក្រុមមនុស្សមានជំនួយគ្នាជាទូលាកិច្ច? (ដើម្បីអនុវត្តតប៉ុន្តែ)
4. បង្កើតការសេចក្តីបញ្ហាចិចជាទូលាកិច្ច នៅពេលណា? (អាចអនុវត្តបាន)
5. ការសេចក្តីបញ្ហាភាសាស្ត្រី? (ដើម្បីអនុវត្តតប៉ុន្តែ)

Drill G. Response

Teacher: Which class is it that has the students who study the best? (Five B)

Student: Class Five B has the students who study the best.

Drill H. Expansion

1. ប៉ោនការធ្វើឱ្យុំ
2. ឧបសម្ព័ន្ធនាមុន
3. ប្រការសុំបញ្ហាបទស្ត្រីរីបចំ
4. ឧបសម្ព័ន្ធដែលមានការសុំបញ្ហាបទស្ត្រីរីបចំ
5. ឧបសម្ព័ន្ធដែលមានការសុំបញ្ហាបទស្ត្រីរីបចំ: ប៉ោនការធ្វើឱ្យុំ}

At vacation time
At every vacation time
At every vacation time some students
At every vacation time some students go hire teachers.

At every vacation time some students go hire teachers so they will force themselves to study to become good.
At every vacation time some students go hire teachers so they will force themselves to study to become good or (because they) want to take a test to skip a class.

At every vacation time some students go hire teachers so they will force themselves to study to become good or (because they) want to take a test to skip a class in the next year.

At every vacation time some students go hire teachers so they will force themselves to study to become good or (because they) want to take a test to skip a class.

At every vacation time some students go hire teachers so they will force themselves to study to become good or (because they) want to take a test to skip a class.

At every vacation time some students go hire teachers.

At every vacation time some students

At every vacation time

At vacation time
UNIT 84

BASIC DIALOGUE

John

1. ឬបានប្រើប្រាស់ប្រកួតប្រជែងឬណា?

Sarom

2. ការប្របុទ្ធភាពស្រាលប្រកួតប្រជែងនេះកុំប្រើកុំប្រាស់ដើម្បីប្រកើណីស្រាប់ការប្រកួតប្រជែងថ្មីម្នាក់បន្ទំនោះ

John

3. គឺបានប្របុទ្ធភាពស្រាលប្រកួតប្រជែងនេះកុំប្រើកុំប្រាស់ដើម្បីប្រកើណីស្រាប់ការប្រកួតប្រជែងថ្មីម្នាក់បន្ទំនោះ

Sarom

4. គឺបានប្របុទ្ធភាពស្រាលប្រកួតប្រជែងឬណា?

John

5. គឺបានប្របុទ្ធភាពស្រាលប្រកួតប្រជែងនេះកុំប្រើកុំប្រាស់ដើម្បីប្រកើណីស្រាប់ការប្រកួតប្រជែងថ្មីម្នាក់បន្ទំនោះ

Sarom

6. មានប្រព័ន្ធជាមួយគ្នាដំណើរការជាដែល?

John

7. មាន់ជាមួយគ្នាញំពីអ្វី?

Sarom

What is the method of examination in Cambodia?

Examinations for the middle school certificate and other higher certificates are taken twice a year - at the end of the school year.

During the first week they have to take the written examination. At this time the students take examinations in all the subjects that they have studied, such as composition, mathematics, chemistry, science and physics.

I think they have one subject a day.

Yes. Usually, if that subject is as difficult as mathematics, chemistry or science, for example, they take one subject a day.

How many hours do they allow?

For examinations in a day?
8.  ateak sampovlha ke teuk yon kint?  
   Yes. For composition or (to do) problems and things like that.

9.  a somproy teuk?  
   Oh, four or five hours.

10.  Sroly chheu sam veslha  
       sam wong phnom sam wong phnom chheu sam?  
       When they have finished the written exam, do the students know if they
       have passed or failed right away?

11.  Tom sampovlha teuk  
       Krom sampovlha teuk?  
       That they can say only for the students they know well themselves, whether they did well
       or not. To know officially for sure, they must wait a day or two until the teachers
       have finished correcting everything.

12.  vana tary sam Veslha?  
       If they know they have passed, what else do they do?

13.  vana mul Den Ly pey sam veslha?  
       They must take the oral examinations. If they fail this section they
       don't get a certificate but they can take the oral test once more.

14.  tom monh sor Sam veslha?  
       The second examination is how many months after the first test?

15.  mruo  
       Maybe two months.

16.  tom monh sor sam veslha?  
       And how about the people who fail the written part: can they take the
       examination the second time?
Yes. And if the students who take
the examination get rather good
marks, only then are they permit-
ted to take the second examination.

If they fail the examination the
second time—either the written
part or the oral part—they have
to wait another year. Only then
can they take the examination for
the same certificate.
**Drill A. Substitution**

1. They can go take the examination for the middle certificate two times a year.
2. They can go take the examination for the advanced certificate two times a year.
3. They can take the examination for some certificates two times a year.
4. They can go take the examination for the B.A. degree two times a year.
5. They can go take the examination for the elementary certificate two times a year.
6. They can go take the examination for the teaching certificate two times a year.
7. They can go take the examination for the medical certificate two times a year.
8. They can go take the examination for the certificate in the military school two times a year.

**Drill B. Variable Substitution**

1. In the first week they have to take the written test.
2. In the second week they have to take the written test.
3. In the second week they have to change the examination site.
4. In the second week they have to begin to take the oral test.
5. In the last week they have to begin to take the oral test.
6. In the last week they have to go look for their names at the school.
7. In the last week they have to appear once more.
Drill C. Double Substitution

1. In the last week they have to listen when they call their names.

Drill D. Multiple Substitution

1. In the first week they have to take the written part of the exam.

2. On the first day they have them do problems in chemistry.

3. In the first month they have to study machinery.

4. In the first hour they have them take the test for a driving license.

5. In the first year they study general subjects.

6. In the first week they have to take an examination in foreign languages.

7. In the first month they have them train to high jump.

8. In the first day they explain only the method of writing.
Drill E. Response

MODEL: តើ: ការសិក្សាជីវិតសិស្សស្នាម៉ារអាចសម្រួលបានជាអាស្រ័យទៀត? (ការសិក្សាជីវិតសិស្សែក្រុងសៀមរាប)

Teacher: When they finish taking the written exam, what else do they do? (wait to hear the results of the examination)

Student: When they finish taking the written part of the exam, they wait to hear the results of the exam.

Drill F. Response

MODEL: យើងសិក្សាអំពីអ្វី? (យើងទទួលអំពីសារព័ត៌មានពីក្រុងភ្នំពេញ)

Teacher: Do you know when you will have to go to Phnom Penh? (I'm still waiting for orders from the Foreign Ministry)

Student: I don't know for sure yet when I have to go to Phnom Penh; I'm still waiting for orders from the Foreign Ministry.
Drill G. Expansion

1. ំបេឃុំនិងអំណុំស្ថានភាពជាច្រើន

2. អាចមិនអាចអនុវត្តបាន

3. អាចមិនអាចអនុវត្តបាន

4. អាចមិនអាចអនុវត្តបាន

5. អាចមិនអាចអនុវត្តបាន

Drill H. Reduction

1. អាចមិនអាចអនុវត្តបាន

Students who take the test with good grades

Students who take the test with rather good grades

Students who take the test with rather good grades but who don't pass

Students who take the test with rather good grades but who don't pass have permission to take the test.

Students who take the test with rather good grades but who don't pass have permission to take the test a second time.
2. ឯកសារដែលមិនបានសរសេរដ៏ល្អដោយក៏ដូចជា គ្រួសារដែលមិនបានសម្រេចសម្រេច។

3. ឯកសារដែលមិនបានសរសេរដ៏ល្អដោយក៏ដូចជា គ្រួសារដែលមិនបានសម្រេចសម្រេច។

4. ឯកសារដែលមិនបានសរសេរដ៏ល្អដោយក៏ដូចជា គ្រួសារដែលមិនបានសម្រេចសម្រេច។

5. ឯកសារដែលមិនបានសរសេរដ៏ល្អដោយក៏ដូចជា គ្រួសារដែលមិនបានសម្រេចសម្រេច។

Students who take the test with rather good grades but who don't pass have permission to take the test.

Students who take the test with rather good grades but who don't pass

Students who take the test with rather good grades
Students who take the test with good grades
1. Sarom has just returned from the airport after having taken his younger brother to board a plane.

2. His younger brother will go study engineering at Cornell University.

3. He received a scholarship for only one year, but if he studies well he will get a scholarship to continue.

4. In Cambodia there are universities also, but they still do not teach all subjects.

5. Persons who receive scholarships go to study subjects which we don't have, to continue higher studies or to train in some subject.

6. In the Cambodian universities they teach economics, law, medicine, agriculture, various technical subjects and engineering.

7. Some foreign students have come to study in the Cambodian universities also.

8. There are some students who come from Laos, Vietnam and France.

9. Some students receive scholarships from the Cambodian government; some others come to study with their own money.

10. But studying in Cambodia is not expensive. They only need money for living, buying books and paying the expenses of testing.
1. Cambodian students who continue their studies abroad usually go to France because they know the language already, and schools in France are not as expensive as in other countries.

2. Besides this some other students go to study in Germany, Russia, China, England and the United States.

3. This group of students for the most part receive scholarships from the countries where they are going to study or from the Cambodian government, which sends them to study.

4. When they go to study in other countries besides France, they have some difficulties because the methods of instruction are different.

5. In Cambodia the methods of instruction are approximately like the French method of instruction.

6. They study six years in the elementary school; following this (they study) seven years in the middle school or lycée.

7. When students study and get good grades in the elementary section, they can enter the lycée or the junior high school without having to take an entrance exam as (was the case) before.

8. In the lycée they can take a test for a degree three times, that is, in the fourth year, the sixth year and the seventh year.
9. In the junior high they can take an exam for a certificate at the end of the fourth year only.

10. When they have finished the middle school, students who want to continue their studies must go to study in the university.

1. Students take a test for various certificates every year, but they don't all take tests.

2. Any student who has finished one part must go to take a test for a certificate.

3. Students who have not yet finished can advance a class whenever they finish studying with excellent grades.

4. Thus, a student studying in the fourth class can advance to the third class when he completes his studies with good grades.

5. Students who study very well in the fourth class or the second class can ask the Ministry of Education to take a test for a certificate with the other students.

6. If they pass, they advance one year by being able to skip a class and going to study in a high class.

7. There are students like this every year.

8. Some try to study privately during vacation to prepare themselves to be better and to take the tests.

9. They must study to finish the educational program of the section in which they must take the test.
1. The method of taking a test in Cambodia is not like that in the United States.

2. In Cambodia the tests are taken for certificates and higher diplomas twice in the school year.

3. In the first week (the students) must take the written examination.

4. They take tests in the various subjects such as composition, mathematics, chemistry, science and physics, for example.

5. They have to take a test in one or two subjects a day.

6. They give three or four hours for each subject.

7. When they have taken the written test and if they have passed, they must take the oral test also.

8. During the oral exam (the examiners) ask about all the subjects that were given in the written exam.

9. The people who pass the oral section receive a passing certificate.

10. Students who fail in the written test but miss by just a few points can take the exam a second time.
UNIT 86

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. មានប៉ុណ្ណោះការណោះក្នុង Phnom Penh ខ្លះង?  
   John

2. មានការណោះរបស់ខ្ញុំ ច្រើន  
   Sarom

3. មានការណោះមួយថ្ងៃ មួយភ្លេង,  
   មួយរឿងមួយតំបន់  
   John

4. មានការណោះរបស់ខ្ញុំ ដូច្នេះ  
   Sarom

5. មានធម្មតានៃពេលព្រឹត្តិការណោះ  
   ខ្លះងហើយមិន។  
   John

6. មានការណោះជាអំពីប្រភេទ  
   ច្រើន  
   Sarom

7. មានការណោះជាអំពីប្រភេទ  
   ច្រើន  
   John

8. ការណោះមួយថ្ងៃមានស្ទើរបួស  
   ដូច្នេះ  
   Sarom

9. ការណោះមាននូវថាមើលដូច្នេះ  
   មានប្រភេទដូច្នេះ  
   John

10. ការណោះមាននូវថាមើលដូច្នេះ  
    មានប្រភេទដូច្នេះ  
    Sarom

   Are there a lot of newspapers in Phnom Penh?

   There are rather a lot. Some newspapers come out every day, others come out once a week.

   They have newspapers in what languages besides Cambodian?

   There are newspapers in French, Chinese, and Vietnamese.

   How about papers in English, are there any?

   There aren't any, but there are magazines in English.

   How many riels does a paper cost?

   Some papers cost 5 riels, others 10 or 15 riels.

   Some papers have 8 pages, others have many pages.
11. កុំព្រេះមាន៉ែបែន៉ែ?  

John  
Which newspaper is the biggest of all?  

Sarom  
The newspaper Neak Cheat Niyum is the biggest newspaper of all.

12. តើកុំព្រេះមាន៉ែបែន៉ែ កុំព្រេះមាន៉ែបែន៉ែ?  

John  
How many times a week is it issued?  

Sarom  
They issue it just once, but it has a lot of pages.

13. តើមាន៉ែបែន៉ែបែន៉ែ ធានា៪កែសម្រាប់ ការសិក្សាពីររដ្ឋ រួមជាងកីឡាមុខ ជាងប្រជាជន?  

John  
Do they give some kind of foreign news?  

Sarom  
Yes, but educating the people to know new methods in agriculture, in raising livestock, in health, and in commerce, for example, are the important stories in this paper.

14. តើមាន៉ែបែន៉ែបែន៉ែបែន៉ែ ក់់ឱ្យក្រុមមិត្តភូមិ ការងារ?  

John  
This is very good because the Cambodian people must receive training like that.
Drill A. Substitution

1. ការប្រើប្រាស់អង្ក្រង្គប្រឹក្សានេះមកពីភាសាណែតា។
   Some newspapers are written in English, others in Cambodian.

2. ការប្រើប្រាស់អង្ក្រង្គប្រឹក្សានេះមកពីភាសាណែតា។
   Some newspapers are written in French, others in Cambodian.

3. ការប្រើប្រាស់អង្ក្រង្គប្រឹក្សានេះមកពីភាសាណែតា។
   Some newspapers are written in Chinese, others in Cambodian.

4. ការប្រើប្រាស់អង្ក្រង្គប្រឹក្សានេះមកពីភាសាណែតា។
   Some newspapers are written in Vietnamese, others in Cambodian.

5. ការប្រើប្រាស់អង្ក្រង្គប្រឹក្សានេះមកពីភាសាណែតា។
   Some newspapers are written in Arabic, others in Cambodian.

6. ការប្រើប្រាស់អង្ក្រង្គប្រឹក្សានេះមកពីភាសាណែតា។
   Some newspapers are written in Indian, others in Cambodian.

7. ការប្រើប្រាស់អង្ក្រង្គប្រឹក្សានេះមកពីភាសាណែតា។
   Some newspapers are written in Cham, others in Cambodian.

Drill B. Substitution

1. ការប្រើប្រាស់អង្ក្រង្គប្រឹក្សានេះមកពីភាសាណែតា។
   In Phnom Penh for the most part they read the newspaper Neak Chest Niyum.

2. ការប្រើប្រាស់អង្ក្រង្គប្រឹក្សានេះមកពីភាសាណែតា។
   In Phnom Penh for the most part they read the newspaper Réalités.

3. ការប្រើប្រាស់អង្ក្រង្គប្រឹក្សានេះមកពីភាសាណែតា។
   In Phnom Penh for the most part they read the newspaper Westophum.

4. ការប្រើប្រាស់អង្ក្រង្គប្រឹក្សានេះមកពីភាសាណែតា។
   In Phnom Penh for the most part they read the newspapers written in Cambodian.

5. ការប្រើប្រាស់អង្ក្រង្គប្រឹក្សានេះមកពីភាសាណែតា។
   In Phnom Penh for the most part they read the newspapers written in French.

6. ការប្រើប្រាស់អង្ក្រង្គប្រឹក្សានេះមកពីភាសាណែតា។
   In Phnom Penh for the most part they read the newspapers written in English.

7. ការប្រើប្រាស់អង្ក្រង្គប្រឹក្សានេះមកពីភាសាណែតា។
   In Phnom Penh for the most part they read the newspaper Wat Phnom.
Drill C. Substitution

1.  They write about foreign affairs, agriculture, and sports.
2.  They write about domestic affairs, agriculture, and sports.
3.  They write (about) short news stories, agriculture, and sports.
4.  They write about travel, agriculture, and sports.
5.  They write about economics, agriculture, and sports.
6.  They write about livestock raising, agriculture, and sports.
7.  They write about new construction, agriculture, and sports.
8.  They write about progress in health, agriculture, and sports.

Drill D. Double Substitution

1. Some papers cost seven riels, others ten riels.
2. Some magazines cost seven riels, others more than ten riels.
3. Some books cost seven riels, others twenty riels.
4. Some rubbings cost seven riels, others more than 15 riels.
5. Some photos cost seven riels, others almost seven riels.
6. Some movie tickets cost seven riels, others 30 riels.
7. Some theatre tickets cost seven riels, others 30 riels.
8. Some kinds of dishes (food) cost seven riels, others more than 20 riels.
Drill E. Double Substitution

1.  The newspaper Nek Cheu Niyum talks about domestic news, foreign news, and Cambodian culture.

2. The magazine Kampuchea talks about domestic news, foreign news, and Cambodian economics.

3. The newspaper Realites talks about domestic news, foreign news, and Cambodian sports.

4. The newspaper Kampuchea talks about domestic news, foreign news, and Cambodian commerce.

5. The magazine Sangkum talks about domestic news, foreign news, and Cambodian politics.

6. The newspaper Wat Phnom this morning talked about domestic news, foreign news, and Cambodian factories.

7. Every day the newspaper Kampuchea talks about domestic news, foreign news, and Cambodian culture.

8. Every week the newspaper Nek Cheu Niyum talks about domestic news, foreign news, and Cambodian sports.

Drill F. Response

MODEL:  The newspaper Kampuchea writes about domestic and foreign news and sports.

Teacher: What things does the newspaper Kampuchea write about? (domestic and foreign news and sports)

Student: The newspaper Kampuchea writes about domestic and foreign news and sports.
2. កើតប៉ុងពីពេលណាដែលអ្នកមិនធ្វើបាន? (ឯកសារទំនាក់ទំនងស្រីស្រាមរស់នៅទៀត)

3. កើតប៉ុងពីពេលណាជាប់ក្រោយពីស្រីស្រាមរស់នៅទៀត? (ឯកសារទំនាក់ទំនងស្រីស្រាមរស់នៅទៀត)

4. កើតប៉ុងពីពេលណាត្រូវបានក្លាយឲ្យមាន? (ឯកសារទំនាក់ទំនងស្រីស្រាមរស់នៅទៀត)

5. កើតប៉ុងពីពេលណាកំពុងពិសេសនិយម៖ (ឯកសារទំនាក់ទំនងស្រីស្រាមរស់នៅទៀត)

Drill G. Response

MODEL: កើតប៉ុងពីពេលណាជាប់ក្រោយពីស្រីស្រាមរស់នៅទៀត? (ឯកសារទំនាក់ទំនង)

Teacher: In Phnom Penh what newspaper do they read for the most part? (Neak Cheat Niyum)

Student: In Phnom Penh they read the newspaper Neak Cheat Niyum for the most part.
Drill H. Transformation

MODEL: ចុះ មិនញកបសិក្ខា មីនប្រការការបក្រាបមែនយើង 
កុមារកសួងរបស់យើងឬមិនមែនយើង 
(រាជាវេសេីត)

Teacher: Besides giving various domestic and 
foreign news stories, they have a 
page each of sports, of science 
and of agriculture. (write about)

Student: Besides writing about various 
domestic and foreign news stories 
they have a page each of sports, 
of science and of agriculture.

Drill I. Response

MODEL: សូមតើកុមារកសួងនៃក្រុងភ្នំពេញ 
ជាកន្លែងណាមួយ? (ក្រុងសៀមរាប) 
(គ្រឿងប្រការ)

Teacher: Which newspaper is the largest of 
all in Phnom Penh? (Neak Cheat 
Niyum)

Student: In Phnom Penh the newspaper Neak 
Cheat Niyum is the largest news-
paper of all.

1. កុមារកសួងនៃក្រុងភ្នំពេញ 
ជាកន្លែងណាមួយ? 
(គ្រឿងប្រការ)

2. កុមារកសួងនៃក្រុងភ្នំពេញ 
ជាកន្លែងណាមួយ? 
(ក្រុងសៀមរាប)

3. កុមារកសួងនៃក្រុងភ្នំពេញ 
ជាកន្លែងណាមួយ? 
(គ្រឿងប្រការ)

4. កុមារកសួងនៃក្រុងភ្នំពេញ 
ជាកន្លែងណាមួយ? 
(ក្រុងសៀមរាប)

303
UNIT 87
BASIC DIALOGUE

1. កុស់ចុងឈើអាមិតអាប៉ាស៊ីសាយប្រកួត និងបំបែកប្រកួត?  
   John  
   Is the newspaper Neak Cheat Niyum a government paper or (is it) private?

2. ការស៊ីវិការស្គ្រីបសិទ្ធសាគសឹង  
   Sarom  
   It's (published by) the Sangkum government.

3. តំបន់ស៊ីវិការស្គ្រីបសិទ្ធសាគសឹង អាចប្រើប្រាស់បានប៉ុន្តែ  
   John  
   Is this newspaper sold abroad?

4. អាស៊ីជាមួយប្រកួតប្រការរដ្ឋ សហរដ្ឋអាមេរិកណា  
   Sarom  
   It is, but not very much. For the most part they (foreigners) only read the editorial because it's a page written in French or English.

5. អាកាសធាវតជាមួយប្រកួតប្រការ?  
   John  
   Do you like to read newspapers?

6. ការស៊ីវិការស្គ្រីបសិទ្ធសាគសឹង ដែលបានបញ្ចប់ការការសុខភាពជាតិទូទៅ  
   Sarom  
   I like to read papers very much, because now, as you know, there are important changing events every day.

7. ការស៊ីវិការស្គ្រីបសិទ្ធសាគសឹង ដែលបានបញ្ចប់ការការសុខភាពជាតិ  
   John  
   Ah, I also read a lot of papers. But I can only read French and English papers.

8. ការស៊ីវិការស្គ្រីបសិទ្ធសាគសឹង ដែលបានបញ្ចប់ការការសុខភាពជាតិ  
   Sarom  
   When I know how to read Cambodian well, I will probably read Neak Cheat Niyum, too.

9. ប្រកួតប្រការដែលមានស៊ីវិការស្គ្រីបសិទ្ធសាគសឹង  
   Sarom  
   Have you ever seen the paper Kampuchea? This newspaper is written in Cambodian and comes out every day.
10.  No. I've only heard them say once that this newspaper is issued by the Ministry of Information.

11.  That's right, and this Ministry issues another paper every day in French.

12.  I read the bulletin of the AKP (Agence Khmère de Presse) almost every day.

13.  I like to read it too, because they write a lot of different stories, and in addition they have the television and radio schedules too.

14.  Yes, my wife wants all these schedules too.
DRILLS

Drill A. Substitution

1. ឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺមិនឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺ
   I don't know how to read newspapers in Cambodian, but I can read French newspapers.

2. ឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺមិនឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺ
   I don't know how to read newspapers in Chinese, but I can read French newspapers.

3. ឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺមិនឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺ
   I don't know how to read newspapers in Vietnamese, but I can read French newspapers.

4. ឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺមិនឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺ
   I don't know how to read newspapers in Thai, but I can read French newspapers.

5. ឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺមិនឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺ
   I don't know how to read newspapers in English, but I can read French newspapers.

6. ឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺមិនឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺ
   I don't know how to read newspapers in Indian, but I can read French newspapers.

7. ឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺមិនឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺ
   I don't know how to read newspapers in Burmese, but I can read French newspapers.

8. ឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺមិនឱ្យឱ្យកើតជាមួយគឺ
   I don't know how to read newspapers in Indonesian, but I can read French newspapers.

Drill B. Substitution

1. ក្រៀមវិជាជាល់នៅលើអំពូលរុករក
   Every morning I wake up early, read the paper, and go to work.

2. ក្រៀមវិជាជាល់នៅលើអំពូលរុករក
   Every morning I wake up early, study Cambodian, and go to work.

3. ក្រៀមវិជាជាល់នៅលើអំពូលរុករក
   Every morning I wake up early, study English, and go to work.

4. ក្រៀមវិជាជាល់នៅលើអំពូលរុករក
   Every morning I wake up early, do calisthenics, and go to work.

5. ក្រៀមវិជាជាល់នៅលើអំពូលរុករក
   Every morning I wake up early, start the car, and go to work.
6. ខ្ញុំចេះជាតិវេលាកាលមើល មេឃុំ
   របាយការណ៍ទេ  

7. ខ្ញុំចេះជាតិវេលាកាលមើល ទេសាធាង
   ភាពថ្មី  

8. ខ្ញុំចេះជាតិវេលាកាលមើល សេវារៀក
   របាយការណ៍ទេ  

Drill C. Transformation

MODEL: ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មី
      ខ្ញុំចេះទេសាធាងថ្មី

1. ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មី មើលរក្សាសិទ្ធស្ថាខា
   ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មីiations

2. ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មី មើលរក្សាសិទ្ធស្ថាខា
   ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មីiations

3. ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មី បង្កើតការងារថ្មី
   ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មីiations

4. ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មី បង្កើតការងារថ្មី
   ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មីiations

5. ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មី បង្កើតការងារថ្មី
   ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មីiations

Drill D. Double Substitution

1. ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មី បង្កើតការងារថ្មី
   ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មីiations

2. ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មី បង្កើតការងារថ្មី
   ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មីiations

3. ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មី បង្កើតការងារថ្មី
   ខ្ញុំចេះមើលទេសាធាងថ្មីiations

Every morning I wake up early, make breakfast, and go to work.

Every morning I wake up early, take a shower, and go to work.

Every morning I wake up early, watch TV, and go to work.

Teacher: I don't know how to read papers in Cambodian, but I can read French papers.

Student: I can read Cambodian and French papers rather well.

As you see, they like to read newspapers in the Information Office.

As you know, for the most part they read newspapers in the Information Office.

As you know, they like to read newspapers in the Information Office.
As you understand, they need to read newspapers in the Information Office.

As you see, they try to read newspapers in the Information Office.

As you heard, they say they want to read newspapers in the Information Office.

As you know, they for the most part read newspapers in the Information Office.

As you know, they like to read newspapers in the Information Office.

Drill E. Multiple Substitution

I haven't read the newspaper yet, but I heard that news on the radio this morning.

I haven't read the magazine yet, but I knew that news before.

I haven't read the declaration yet, but I listened to that news last night.

I haven't read the story yet, but I heard that news when I went to work.

I haven't read his letter yet, but I knew that news this morning.

I haven't read the newspaper yet, but I listened to that news yesterday.

Drill F. Response

MODEL: តើអ្នកទទួលបានប្រការណ៍ថា? (អាចមានសម្រាប់សិក្សានេះកំពុងថ្ងៃមុន) តើអ្នកទទួលបានប្រការណ៍ថា? (អាចមានសម្រាប់សិក្សានេះកំពុងថ្ងៃមុន)

Teacher: Did you hear that declaration this morning? (a newspaper to read it)

Student: No, I didn't hear it; I will buy a newspaper to read it.
Drill G. Response

**MODEL:** តើ មានរបាយការណ៍ដូចខាងក្រោមគឺបានទេ? (រូបភាពសម្រាប់ការប្រការ)
នៅក្នុងការប្រការបញ្ជាក់ថា ខ្លះទេទេទេទេទេទេ

1. មានរបាយការណ៍ដូចខាងក្រោមគឺបានទេ? (រូបភាពសម្រាប់ការប្រការ)
2. មានរបាយការណ៍ដូចខាងក្រោមគឺបានទេ? (រូបភាពសម្រាប់ការប្រការ)
3. មានរបាយការណ៍ដូចខាងក្រោមគឺបានទេ? (រូបភាពសម្រាប់ការប្រការ)
4. មានរបាយការណ៍ដូចខាងក្រោមគឺបានទេ? (រូបភាពសម្រាប់ការប្រការ)
5. មានរបាយការណ៍ដូចខាងក្រោមគឺបានទេ? (រូបភាពសម្រាប់ការប្រការ)

**Teacher:** Did you hear that declaration this morning? (a newspaper to read more about it)

**Student:** Yes, I heard it, and I'm going to buy a paper to read more about it.

Drill H. Transformation

**MODEL:** ខ្លះ។ ឱ្យស្គាល់នោះរូបភាពដែលបានបង្ហាញនៅក្នុងការប្រការបញ្ជាក់ថា គឺបានទេទេទេទេទេទេ

1. នៅក្នុងការប្រការបញ្ជាក់ថា គឺបានទេទេទេទេទេទេ
2. នៅក្នុងការប្រការបញ្ជាក់ថា គឺបានទេទេទេទេទេទេ
3. នៅក្នុងការប្រការបញ្ជាក់ថា គឺបានទេទេទេទេទេទេ
4. នៅក្នុងការប្រការបញ្ជាក់ថា គឺបានទេទេទេទេទេទេ
5. នៅក្នុងការប្រការបញ្ជាក់ថា គឺបានទេទេទេទេទេទេ

**Teacher:** In some newspapers, such as the newspaper Kampuchea and the Bulletin of Agence Khmere Presse, they publish the TV programs.

**Student:** I like to read the newspaper Kampuchea and the Bulletin of Agence Khmere.
Drill I. Extension

Teacher: I read the paper every morning. (leave to come to school)

Student: I read the paper every morning before leaving to come to school.
UNIT 88

BASIC DIALOGUE

John

1. Do you know how many copies of each issue a Cambodian newspaper prints?

Sarom

2. I don't know for sure, maybe between eight and nine thousand at least.

3. Formerly, the people in the outer provinces didn't read papers much; for the most part they only listened to news on the radio.

4. Now, they have many information centers, and the number of people who like to read newspapers is getting larger.

John

5. I think radio is a very important tool for broadcasting news, and it's quick too.

Sarom

6. The radio is very useful. Every country is the same, because (people) can know the news immediately even though they live far from the cities.

John

7. And the peasants especially don't have to spend and buy papers. They can hear the radio at the houses of neighbors who have radios or at the Ministry of Information.
8. ស្តេចឈ្នូអាចធ្វើការជាច្រេងជាងមុន
ដើម្បីធ្វើឱ្យវាមានការបញ្ហាជាងមុន
ជាច្រេង

John

As you already know, radios are not as expensive as before. (People) can buy a battery radio rather cheaply.

9. ប្រសិនបើយើងស្រួលឱ្យប្រើរថា
ប្រកួតប្រជែងជាច្រេងប្រកួត
នាងមិនមានបញ្ហាជាងមុន
ជាច្រេង

Sarom

I see that villagers use radios a lot because they can buy them rather cheaply, and they don't have any difficulty buying batteries.

10. មានហ្វីរដ្ឋាភិបាលក្រុមហ៊ុន
ដើម្បីផលិត្យុបបាន

Sarom

There is a factory making batteries, isn't there?

11. មិនមានបញ្ហាជាងមុននូវកូន
នាងមិនមានបញ្ហាជាងមុន

John

These days we have enough batteries.

12. មានហ្វីរដ្ឋាភិបាលក្រុមហ៊ុន
ដើម្បីផលិត្យុបបាន
ដើម្បីផលិត្យុបបាន

John

That's very good. Before, Cambodians bought almost all their goods from abroad.
Drill A. Substitution

1. ប្រយោគអោយក្លាយជាពិសេសុំណូវជាច្រើនបំផុត 
    បានឈរឈរឈរទៅមកមក?
2. ប្រយោគអោយក្លាយជាពិសេសុំណូវជាច្រើន 
    សម្រាប់ជួយមកមក?
3. ប្រយោគអោយក្លាយជាពិសេសុំណូវជាច្រើន 
    ក្នុងមកមក?
4. ប្រយោគអោយក្លាយជាពិសេសុំណូវជាច្រើន 
    មកមក?
5. ប្រយោគអោយក្លាយជាពិសេសុំណូវជាច្រើន 
    សម្រាប់ជួយមកមក?
6. ប្រយោគអោយក្លាយជាពិសេសុំណូវជាច្រើន 
    មកមក?
7. ប្រយោគអោយក្លាយជាពិសេសុំណូវជាច្រើន 
    មកមក?
8. ប្រយោគអោយក្លាយជាពិសេសុំណូវជាច្រើន 
    មកមក?

Drill B. Substitution

1. ក្នុងការស្វែងរកកាលក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់ 
    យើង គាត់មកមកមកមកទៅមកមកមកមកមកមកមក 
    មកមកមកមកមកមកមកមកមក 
2. ក្នុងការស្វែងរកកាលក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់ 
    យើង គាត់មកមកមកមកទៅមកមកមកមកមកមកមក 
    មកមកមកមកមកមកមកមកមក 
3. ក្នុងការស្វែងរកកាលក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់ 
    យើង គាត់មកមកមកមកទៅមកមកមកមកមកមកមក 
    មកមកមកមកមកមកមកមក 
4. ក្នុងការស្វែងរកកាលក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់ 
    យើង គាត់មកមកមកមកទៅមកមកមកមកមកមកមក 
    មកមកមកមកមកមកមក 
5. ក្នុងការស្វែងរកកាលក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់ 
    យើង គាត់មកមកមកមកទៅមកមកមកមកមកមកមក 
    មកមកមកមកមកមក 
6. ក្នុងការស្វែងរកកាលក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់ 
    យើង គាត់មកមកមកមកទៅមកមកមកមកមកមកមក 
    មកមកមកមក 
7. ក្នុងការស្វែងរកកាលក្នុងប្រទេសរបស់ 
    យើង គាត់មកមកមកមកទៅមកមកមកមកមកមក 
    មកមកមក
Drill C. Substitution

1. They have factories to assemble transistor radios in Phnom Penh.

2. They have factories to assemble auto bodies in Phnom Penh.

3. They have factories to assemble motors (motor scooters) in Phnom Penh.

4. They have factories to assemble various machine parts in Phnom Penh.

5. They have factories to assemble electrical appliances in Phnom Penh.

6. They have factories to assemble automobile motors in Phnom Penh.

Drill D. Double Substitution

1. Batteries are cheap and radios are cheap, because they're all made in the country.

2. Batteries are cheap and paper is cheap, because they're all made in the country.

3. Cement is cheap and paper is cheap, because it's all made in the country.

4. Cement is cheap and plywood is cheap, because it's all made in the country.

5. Liquor is cheap and plywood is cheap, because it's all made in the country.

6. Glassware is cheap and tires are cheap, because they're all made in the country.

7. Glassware is cheap and textiles are cheap, because they're all made in the country.
Drill E. Variable Simple Substitution

1.  People who live in the countryside can go read newspapers in the information kiosks or in the sala khum (headquarters of the khum).

2.  People who live in the countryside can go read newspapers in the information kiosks or in the sala srok.

3.  People who live in the countryside can go read newspapers in the information kiosks or in the library of the srok.

4.  People who live in the countryside can go borrow newspapers in the information kiosks or at the library of the srok.

5.  People who live in the countryside can go borrow magazines at the information kiosks or at the library of the srok.

6.  People who live in remote villages can go borrow magazines at the information kiosks or at the library of the srok.

7.  People who live near the sala srok can go borrow magazines at the information kiosks or at the library of the srok.

8.  People who live near the sala srok can go borrow magazines at the information kiosks or at the library of the srok.

Drill F. Response

MODEL:  People who live in the cities get their news (radio, TV and newspapers)

Student:  For the most part, people who live in the cities get their news by radio, TV and newspapers.
3. ឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬឬị
Now the Cambodian people can go to information kiosks or libraries in order to read books newspapers, and magazines.

Now the Cambodian people can go to information kiosks or libraries in order to read books, newspapers, and magazines, and listen to various broadcasts.

Now the Cambodian people can go to information kiosks or libraries in order to read books, newspapers, and magazines, and listen to various broadcasts on the radio and TV.
UNIT 89

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. តើមានរាប់មួយគឺ?  
    John

   អ្នកមានរាប់មួយគឺ?  
    Sarom

2. ការណ៍ អ្នក រឹងចិត្ត?  
    John

   អ្នកស្លាប់ត្រូវមកត្រូវ  
    Sarom

3. តើ អ្នកមានអ៊ីនធឺណិត?  
    John

   មាន អ៊ីនធឺណិតមី?  
    Sarom

4. ក្នុង រឿងយុវជនអ៊ីនធឺណិត  
    មានចំនួនមួយ?  
    John

   មានអ៊ីនធឺណិតចំនួនមួយ?  
    Sarom

5. តើ អ្នកមានអ៊ីនធឺណិតមូលដ្ឋាន?  
    John

   អ្នកមានអ៊ីនធឺណិតមូលដ្ឋាន?  
    Sarom

6. អ្នកមានអ៊ីនធឺណិតប្រចាំថ្ងៃ?  
    John

   អ្នកមានអ៊ីនធឺណិតប្រចាំថ្ងៃ?  
    Sarom

7. អ្នកមានអ៊ីនធឺណិតមួយ  
    John

   អ្នកមានអ៊ីនធឺណិតមួយ  
    Sarom

8. នៅពេលណាដែល  
    John

   នៅពេលណាដែល  
    Sarom

9. នៅពេល  នឹងមកសុទ្ធកម្រិត  
    John

   (I'd) កំពុងមកសុទ្ធកម្រិត  
    Sarom
10. Have you ever heard the commercials?

11. I've heard them from time to time, but some times I can't understand because they talk too fast.

12. Do you have a T.V.?

13. I just bought one last week. My family likes to watch Cambodian theater very much.

14. I want to buy one but I'm waiting a month or two more until I have a little money.
Drill A. Substitution

1. My radio is rather large and can get a lot of stations.

2. My radio has a lot of meter bands and can get a lot of stations.

3. My radio is heavy and can get a lot of stations.

4. My radio has a long antenna and can get a lot of stations.

5. My radio is small and can get a lot of stations.

6. My radio is pretty and can get a lot of stations.

7. My radio has a speaker and can get a lot of stations.

8. My radio sounds clear and can get a lot of stations.

Drill B. Substitution

1. Late at night I always listen to music from Europe.

2. Late at night I always listen to music from Latin America.

3. Late at night I always listen to music from Brazil or Cuba.

4. Late at night I always listen to music from India.

5. Late at night I always listen to music from abroad.

6. Late at night I always listen to music from the United States.

7. Late at night I always listen to music from France.
Drill C. Double Substitution

1. I don't listen to music very much; I listen to news for the most part.
2. I don't listen to editorials very much; I listen to home economics for the most part.
3. I don't listen to news very much; I read the paper for the most part.
4. I don't listen to European music very much; I listen to traditional Cambodian music for the most part.
5. I don't listen to the French program very much; I listen to the program in English for the most part.
6. I don't listen to the radio very much; I read books for the most part.
7. I don't listen to the music on the radio very much; I look at TV for the most part.
8. I don't listen to the foreign stations very much; I listen to Cambodian stations for the most part.

Drill D. Variable Double Substitution

1. I just bought a radio, and now I'm installing the antenna.
2. He just bought a TV, and now I'm installing the antenna.
3. He just bought a car, and now I'm installing the radio.
4. He just bought a house, and now I'm installing the telephone.
5. He just bought a radio, and now I'm installing it in the room.
6. He just bought a wardrobe, and now I'm installing it in the room.
7. He just bought a TV, and now I'm installing it in the living room.
Drill E. Multiple Substitution

1. I try to listen to them speaking Cambodian on the radio, but I still don't understand much because they talk too fast.

2. I try to listen to them speaking Chinese on the telephone, but I still don't understand much because they talk too unclearly.

3. I try to listen to them speaking English on the TV, but I still don't understand much because they talk too fast.

4. I try to listen to them speaking French on the radio, but I still don't understand much because I can't hear well.

5. I try to listen to them speaking Spanish on the radio, but I still don't understand much because they talk very fast.

6. I try to listen to them speaking Vietnamese on the tape, but I still don't understand much because they talk unlike Vietnamese.

7. I try to listen to them speaking Cambodian on the TV, but I still don't understand much because they speak a lot of words I don't understand.

8. I try to listen to them speaking English on records, but I still don't understand much because they speak in a way I'm not used to hearing.

Drill F. Equivalence

**MODEL:**  
I listen to the radio from time to time when I'm not busy.

**Student:** Sometimes, if I'm not busy, I listen to the radio.

**Teacher:**

1. 

2. 

325
3.  ស្មេរបំពង់យោងអារម្មណ៍ដោយរមណីយ្វារ ស្រាប់ការសម្រាប់អារម្មណ៍ នឹងឈ្មោះអារម្មណ៍ដោយរមណីយ្វារ

4.  ប្រព័ន្ធការរបស់ប្រព័ន្ធចាវតាម នឹងឈ្មោះអារម្មណ៍ដោយរមណីយ្វារ

5.  ប្រព័ន្ធការរបស់ប្រព័ន្ធចាវតាម នឹងឈ្មោះអារម្មណ៍ដោយរមណីយ្វារ

Drill G. Transformation

MODEL: ដូច្នេះ កញ្ជ្រោមោងប្រុងប្រាក់ជាកិច្ច? (តិចៗ)
          តើក្រោមឈ្នះប្រុងប្រាក់នេះជាកិច្ចប្រុងប្រាក់ទេ?

1.  ឬក្រោមឈ្នះប្រុងប្រាក់ជាកិច្ចប្រុងប្រាក់? (តិចៗ)

2.  ឬក្រោមឈ្នះប្រុងប្រាក់ជាកិច្ចប្រុងប្រាក់? (តិចៗ)

3.  ការរំបែកមុខផ្លែឈើមានខ្ពស់? (េសេស)

4.  ការរំបែកមុខផ្លែឈើមានខ្ពស់? (េសេស)

5.  ការរំបែកមុខផ្លែឈើមានខ្ពស់? (េសេស)

Drill H. Expansion

1.  ខ្ញុំមិនទទួលទៅទៀត។

2.  ខ្ញុំមិនទទួលទៅទៀត។

3.  ខ្ញុំមិនទទួលទៅទៀត។

4.  ខ្ញុំមិនទទួលទៅទៀត។

5.  ខ្ញុំមិនទទួលទៅទៀត។

6.  ខ្ញុំមិនទទួលទៅទៀត។

Teacher:  Your radio runs on electricity doesn't it? (batteries)

Student:  Your radio uses either electricity or batteries doesn't it?

I didn't buy a radio.

When I was in Hong Kong, I didn't buy a radio.

Last month when I was in Hong Kong, I didn't buy a radio.

Last month when I was in Hong Kong, I didn't buy a radio because I had a lot of things.

Last month when I was in Hong Kong, I didn't buy a radio because I had a lot of other things.

Last month when I was in Hong Kong, I didn't buy a radio because I had a lot of other things and I thought.
7.  Last month when I was in Hong Kong, I didn't buy a radio because I had a lot of other things and I thought I could buy a radio made in Phnom Penh cheaper.

Drill I. Reduction

1.  Last month when I was in Hong Kong, I didn't buy a radio because I had a lot of other things and I thought I could buy a radio made in Phnom Penh cheaper.

2.  Last month when I was in Hong Kong, I didn't buy a radio because I had a lot of other things.

3.  Last month when I was in Hong Kong, I didn't buy a radio because I had a lot of other things.

4.  Last month when I was in Hong Kong, I didn't buy a radio because I had a lot of other things.

5.  Last month when I was in Hong Kong, I didn't buy a radio.

6.  When I was in Hong Kong, I didn't buy a radio.

7.  I didn't buy a radio.
UNIT 90

NARRATION

1. In Cambodia there are rather many newspapers.
2. Of all these papers, some are issued daily, others are issued weekly.
3. They are published in Cambodian, French, Chinese, and Vietnamese.
4. They still don’t have newspapers written in English, but there are magazines in English.
5. Some papers have many pages; others don’t have more than ten pages.
6. They are sold cheaply, from five riels to 15 or 20 riels.
7. The largest newspaper is Neak Cheat Niyum.
8. In this newspaper they talk about various domestic activities, culture, and Cambodian traditional law.
9. There are editorial pages written in Cambodian and French.
10. Other pages talk about agriculture, commerce, science, sports, and humorous stories.
1. The newspaper Neak Cheat Niyum is the newspaper of the Sangkum government.

2. They sell this newspaper everywhere inside the country and outside the country also.

3. Foreigners, especially the representatives of various countries, buy this paper to read the editorials.

4. Other people who know how to read Cambodian buy it to read about the various activities in Cambodia.

5. Foreigners who do not know how to read Cambodian can buy Réalités Cambodgiennes to read. This paper is issued in French every week.

6. They can also read the bulletin of the Agence Khmère Presse.

7. This bulletin is issued daily by the Cambodian Press Agency.

8. In this bulletin there is all kinds of news, both domestic and foreign; and there is even the television schedule.

9. The newspaper Kampuchea is issued every day from the Ministry of Information.

10. This newspaper contains news just like that in the bulletin but written in Cambodian.
1. At first in the countryside and the provinces they didn't like to read newspapers very much, they mostly listened to the news on the radio.

2. Now in the business district they have information centers, and the country people can go read the papers and listen to the radio at will.

3. The people living in the countryside don't buy many newspapers; they usually buy radios which use batteries.

4. They can buy this kind of radio cheaply too, because they make radios and batteries in Phnom Penh.

5. Now they know the various news (stories) immediately, too even if they live in villages.

6. In each village there are at least one or two households that have radios.

7. If they want to read newspapers or magazines, they can go to the house of the mee phum or mee khum (hamlet chief or village chief) or to the Information Center.

8. There are two Cambodian radio stations.

9. They broadcast news and music almost twenty-four hours (a day).

10. And (people) can hear these broadcasts in many languages.
1. A few years ago, they did not have a lot of radios to use, unlike today.

2. Now they can buy radios which use batteries without difficulty.

3. Some people have large radios which can receive many foreign stations.

4. The Cambodian radio station broadcasts news and various kinds of music almost 24 hours (a day).

5. They broadcast in many languages, and they have national and foreign music for entertainment every day.

6. The commercial broadcasts to sell things are also heard every day.

7. The Cambodian Ministry of Information has expanded greatly in these past few years.

8. They have increased the number of hours they broadcast and they have many interesting programs.

9. They have established a very nice television station and a factory to make transistor radios also.

10. This very important success in information helps the Cambodian and foreigner to understand much about all the domestic and foreign activities.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cambodian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ការងំបើ</td>
<td>boat 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រោយសម្រាប់</td>
<td>airplane 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>កាលីព្រឹត្តិ</td>
<td>Cambodia 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ការសកលពិសោធន</td>
<td>laborer, workers 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ការបោះបង់</td>
<td>program, schedule 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមុោលភាព</td>
<td>strength, power 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមុោល</td>
<td>I, I am (used in talking to a monk) 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>agriculture 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>to pick, to pluck 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>corner 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>motorboat 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>briefly 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>to cut 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>to make clothing 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>to cut clothing, get a hair cut 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>briefcase 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>a cap 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>to hold 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>to cut, hack (with an ax or cleaver) 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>wedding, marry; work, affair, activity 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>business 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>heavy work 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>life, living conditions 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>invasion 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>Karachi 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>office 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>when; time 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>when, whenever 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>if, when, whenever 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>originally 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>previously 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្រមេ</td>
<td>newspaper 30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
coffee 26
ingestation 39
monk’s house 68
moving pictures 47
February 40
child 2
children 2
student, pupil 2
unlisted man 36
son, or daughter-in-law 26
rose (flower) 27
East 31
can, to be able, possible 58
to be born 42
to sleep 45
correction 84
glass 38
praiseworthy 78
to shave 43
to shave the beard 30
Rabbit Island (name of island) 36
ninety 23
rubber 77
chair 27
don’t 2
don’t put it off too long 54
don’t worry 36
do not, yet 49
appointment, fixed period 41
cloth 41
beginning 71
comic, funny, humorous 49
Kompong-Cham (Province of Cambodia) 61
Kompong Som (Province of Cambodia) 63
Kompong Speu (Province of Cambodia) 44
height 75
be in the process 26
be in the process of 30
in flight 40
peak 68
wall, 68
wall of Angkor 63
limit (v., n.) 68
sad 49
to amuse oneself 50
crab 58
board, plank 12
blackboard 12
plywood 72
hot, warn 41
in 4
domestic 86
design 76
art, pattern, design 76
a head 52
volume 88
book for predictions 42
near by, next to 35
nephew or niece 26
nephew 26
niece 26
in-law
to be young child 44
children (in general)
servant 27
poor 42
dirty 43
Kratie (Province of Cambodia) 71
paper 18
Cambodian garment consisting of a rectangular piece of cloth 77
mature girl (unmarried) 27
Ministry 24
Foreign Ministry 24
Information Ministry 24
side 12
right side 12
left side 12
on 13
in front 13
on top 16
on the bottom; below 16
upstairs 27
East 31
South 32
to shine 43
to shine shoes 43
to fail, to miss 30
the day after tomorrow 48
the day after tomorrow 48
wrong, incorrect 6
to break 29
month 24
province (head-word in compound names of provinces) 88
November 40
pants, lower garment 27


clothing 27

Khone (name of a place) 71

to try 2

to bite 52

borrow 34

green, young, fresh 88

lazy 52

I, me

back 11

tall, high 41

Cambodian (Khmer)
black 9
pencil
wind 36

tiger 42

fear, to be afraid, dread 29
short 14

body; you (Phnom Penh only) 26
(by) oneself 23

loud, strong 2

loudly 2

some (pluralizer) 10

to roast (Chinese style) 47

to miss, to fail 79

sand 73

silently 19

string, thread, rope 77

necklace 77

silver belt 77

antenna 89

(tape) 76

surely, inevitably; to remain, reside 67

to live, to survive (term used with monk) 67

mathematics 81

customs 37

teaching 84

he, him, she, her, they, them 10

to intend, to think 18

health center 80

chemistry 84

kilo 38

is; that is

gratitude

quality, virtue 79

noodle soup 49

a pair 88

to draw, sketch 36

to strike 30

to strike a match 30

proper, correct 79

what I should take and what I should leave behind 79

rather well 88

he, him, she, her, they, them 4

cow, ox 42

a pile 16

idea 42

character 42

336
design, drawing 12 and 18

together, each other 15
doesn't have; no 13

cover 18
all of, every 37
of all kinds of, every variety 88
to govern 70
enough, plentiful 88
all kinds 38
enough, sufficiently, to be complete 33 and 37

just, only 18
better, rather 53
grain; ammunition
pill, grain 38
fever 52
malaria 52
teacher 42
soothsayer 42
doctor 41

veterinarian 41
family 23
things, accessories, ingredients, spices 77
silver objects 77
equipment; tool, instrument 54
bed 27
accident(serious) 52
railroad station 24

to see 3
to be hungry
warehouse 79
to tie

gift for a wedding 77
to want 5
lamp
food(term used in conversation with a monk 68
to point 15
to park, to stop 63
Chak To-mouk (four faces) 72
to finish, come to the end of 19
distance; far 31
to refine 78
Glossary

Cambodian Basic Course

to refine kerosene 78

to refine gasoline 78

sculpture, frieze 77

movement 84

Roval Socialist Cambodian Youth Movement 84

yes (said by a woman) 90

to inject, insert, pour, deposit 86

to inject, inoculate 86

Jakarta 37

dish, plate 38

kitchen utensil 38

sparrow 43

to start, begin 18

Cham (an ethnic minority in Cambodia) 86

old 16

to raise, to care for 86

seventy 23

heart, mind, disposition 82

Chinese 21

last; end 34

weekend 34

last weekend 45

to go down; and as for 12

to go back and forth (to go up and down) 72

to enter 22

to like 22

to go to bed early 45

to go to bed late 45

New Year 65

enter school 56

banana 46

to go out, leave, exit 90

to leave 90

to go in and out 90

to leave on a trip 90

come out daily 90

a stupa 33

know how to 20

to divide 25

grandchild 26

great-grandchild 26

great-great-grandchild 26

great-great-great-grandchild 26

provincial governor 36

chief monk 68

right, exact, to coincide with 73

right in my busy time 73

farm (excluding rice fields) 73

(kitchen) garden 71

the tie 50

subtitle 50

station, parking 71

railroad station 71

airport 37

airfield 37

airport 49

to spend 21

338
section, part, as for, on the part of 50

as for, on the other hand 50

problem 38
among 80
remember, notice 49
amount; about 52
to prosper, increase, advance 66
yes (used in conversation with a monk) 66
to copy 19
to wait, remember
oldest (son or daughter) 23
law, custom; copy "for newspaper" 38
regulations 44
clearly, sure, certain: clear 10
war, to fight 44
nose 52
chains 62
to be wrong; error, mistake 42
a brush 30
a toothbrush 30
to trim 43
to reap 74
much, many 10
mostly, usually 10
bank (river) 61
to eat (used with a monk, if the monk is the one eating) 68
be quick, fast 40
to burn, to be on fire 39
the house is on fire 39
to check 37
dog 42
to wonder 76
to be good, delicious (for food) 24
better than other restaurants (the best) 47
be far, distant 24
year 24
pot, kettle, pottery 79
to go directly 40
midwife 23
to contaminate, to be contaminated
to cross 38
to give birth (slang) 38
be smart, clever 41
to answer, reply 5
to profit, to gain 76
to take advantage of an opportunity 76
left (side) 31
full (of foods, said of people) 38

umbrella; parachute

granary 74
wall 11
people 90
foreign people 90

to hold a feast, have a banquet 59

Japanese 41
diseases 52
t.b. 52
to address someone 21 x 27
good-bye 21 x 27
hello 21 x 27
to be 22
with 22
for example 25
well, healthy 37
(more) than 14
skilled worker 39
a mechanic, "expert with hands" 39
a barber 44
a tailor 44
blacksmith 53
silversmith 77
nation, national, nationality
Europeans
firm, durable 38
floor 27
near; almost, about 35
close 35
nearby, close by 88
neighbor 88
to ride 34
to ride a bicycle 34
to go boating (usually with motor) 57
to go boating (usually rowing or sailing) 57
gas stove 79
kitchen 27
to believe 44
to fry 30
around 33
aid 78
camp 72
concentration of fish 72
step, pace, quick strides 80
to know, to understand, to learn 87
to already know 76
pig 42
corner, peninsula 32
Chru-Changvar (a small peninsula in Cambodia) 69
deep, profound 71
Cambodian Basic Course

Glossary

vant

to stop 15

staying up; to stand 15

to be sick 26

a broken heart 52

rented, hired; servant; the rent (money) 83

trader 69

cattle trader

name; to be named 21

time 24

range, chain (of mountains)

expanse of forest, jungle
dip up, draw up (water, etc.)
a shoulder-pole
to parade, accompany in procession 88

same

bottle 38
ten

15th day of the waning moon

to assemble; to set 88

at (the future time of) when; until; to arrive 20

up to, as many as 30

turn 43

your turn 43

to put 9

punishment 83
dacron 41

to break apart (intrans.); to be able to read 20

as far as the eye can see 71

typewriter 58

soil; ground

silt, alluvial soil 71

know something; be aware of 15

doctor 36

to brush 30

to brush the teeth 30

to grow

coconut 72

be like, be similar 41

often 52

fast; faster 2

rapidly 2

often 42

to eat; to smoke 24

smoke a cigarette 30

to pull 54

handle, grip 13

pen (for writing) 13

341
look like 41
such as, look like 25
to be like this 9
to be like that; by the way 9
therefore 80
to change 40
beginning, origin; original, first;
stalk, tree (in compounds)
tree, plant 87
in order to, for 21
to walk, run; 27
go for a walk 27
a strcol 27
to go telling fortunes 42
to sleep 30
to be unable to sleep 30
starter (car) 39
territory 71
also, too 13
who, which 5
ever, did at least once 37
hand, arm 15
by, with, because 45
being in the armed services 45
to take off (clothes) 30
to take off clothing 30
the breast 26
a pile; a piece
to stop, place 40
news 30
domestic news 86
a trip 40
plants, vegetables, crops 72
Cambodian Basic Course

Glossary

- to connect, continuous, further: 20
- to go on; to continue: 20
- from there: 45
- later on: 30
- to elevate: 89

price: 35
taxi: 40

Takeo (Province of Cambodia): 37

by; to follow; according to: 33
- after me; according to me: 33
- I guess: 33
- to catch up: 33

by car: 33

a little, few: 2

softly: 2

inflate; full; firm: 39

stuffy nose: 39

table: 27

October: 40

small: 17

actor: 49

if; question particle: 7

a telephone: 31

tea: 26

but, only: 86

(always) always: 50

usually, as a matter of custom: 84

tennis: 51

postage-stamp: 58

ton: 72

to set up, to establish: 44

since: 30

from the beginning: 44

to weave: 80

South: 32

straight: 47

spot: 24

Where? Which place?: 14

transistor: 58

cool, cold: 37

pond:

to return, be back: 29

to turn around; reverse direction: 87

tractor: 78

fish: 46

dried fish: 72

deep fried fish: 47

sea fish: 46

must

correct, right: 4

that's right: 4

to need: 52

must be; to be related: 22

what relation? (in the family): 22

to immerse, soak: 74
to take pictures 35

to back up 39

to say

to repeat

what? 33

vase (for flowers) 78

kiss 30

to kiss goodbye 30

to take care 54

to add, increase again, more, in addition 39

Thai-Sang (name of a Chinese restaurant)

cheap 49 Phnom-Penh 49

daytime, day 24

Monday 28

Tuesday 28

Wednesday 28

Thursday 28

Friday 28

Saturday 28

Sunday 28

day off; holiday 33

work day

today 33

holiday 33

birthday 33

the sun

road, highway 32

class 47

class No. 1 47

1st grade, secondary (12th year) 83

6th grade, secondary (7th year) 83

7th grade (6th year) 83

12th grade (1st year of school) advanced class 83

medicine, drugs 41

drugstore 41

stone 38

battery (small) 38

new, recent 10

clear 71

to be expensive; price 31

in-law 26

how much?

to give 68

to greet; hello 68

to say good-bye 68

flag 18

national flag 18

to receive, to meet, to pick up, accept 29

to eat (impersonal) 24

to recognize 82

river 72

Tonle Bost (the name of the river) 62

Tonlé-Buon-Mouk, name meaning 'river having four tributaries'
patrol, squad 44
philosophy 81

to visit 65

magazine 79

duck 47

roast duck 47

to contact; to have relations with 38

to pull 39

Sir, Mister, you (term used in conversation with a monk)

short, squat 41

until, reaching 88

all night; until daylight 32

until 39

soldier 36

paratrooper

infantryman

marine (soldier) 42

Air Force member

to buy 27

a place; ordinalizing prefix 3

second 83

third 83

first

city, town 12

liquid, water 68

ice, snow 73

milk 26

tea (liquid) 70

orange juice 68

a waterfall 71

the water recedes 72

the water rises 71

to keep; put; leave 43

to leave hair long 45

sadness; grief 70

wardrobe (furniture) 79

closet 79

refrigerator 79

a boat 36

a telephone 88

a telegram 88

television 88

just 30

sure, certain 36

again, more 2

final negative particle; final emphatic particle; final question particle 67

tourist 71

to recite the scriptures 68

view, landscape 87

guilt 23

builty 23

go ahead and 21

to go; to; toward 39

to go forward 39

to go out 51

to go where? 46

until; to arrive 30

to go straight 30

to go to visit, go for a walk 27
ripe 16

to perch 68

merchandise 68

modern 83

customs 69

vacant, free, not busy 28

page 3

by that time, as soon as, by the time that; until 29

until it's time 49

'ze 25

both, all (as in all three); including, as many as 30

every all those 20

all 3

all of you 3

doctor 27

the door of the room 73

continent 71

peninsula 71

loose, slack 43

big 17

to be heavy, serious 26

December 40

tooth 30

to fall 72

hail is falling 72

it snows 72

habit, used to, accustomed to; have ever (done) 24

to do 43

grow crops (except cereal) 69

to do little by little 74

to cook 56

to celebrate; 48

to massage 43

to repair (general)

meaning

what does it mean?

policy, politics, political science 25

foreign affairs 25

person, people (a classifier)

four persons

dragon 42

Miss (title) 21

minute 38

second 38

dean, director (school) 83
Cambodian Basic Course

Glossary

រាយាចាម្ករ warrant officer 44
រាយាល័រ an officer (military) 42
រាយាគេ corporal 44
រាយាគេហ្វ៊ុរ chief corporal 44
រាយាគេព័រ watch, clock 39
រាយាលោ to go (used with a monk) 66
រាយាសេរ to like, prefer; popular, preferred 15
រាយាបាន to talk, to speak 72
រាយាបាន student 69
រាយាវ៉ុង remember, think 22
រាយាវេរ៉ូ to recognize or to remember; think of 22
រាយាវិរ to with, will 3
រាយាវុំ to catch fish 62
រាយាវេំ this; here
រាយាន៊ី of 8
រាយាប៉ួ over there, there, that 5
រាយាដូ at; to stay, to live 11
រាយារ៉ុេំ at (the time of), when 30
រាយាឝៃាវ still (does) 30
រាយាឝៃាវ៉ុំ at the time, (this, that time) 30
រាយាឝៃុា there, over there 30
រាយាឝៃុុ confection, anything made with flour 58
រាយាឝៃុុំ bread 30
រាយាឝៃុស to bring, take 26
រាយាឝៃុរ older sibling-in-law 26
រាយាឝៃុុអ៉ុប first-cousin 26
រាយាឝៃុុស a money bank 31
រាយាឝៃុុសៀ lobster 46
រាយាឝៃុជ្រុ order, command 15
រាយាឝៃុុេ to bow; a bow 68
រាយាឝៃុុេៃ to expand 78
រាយាឝៃុុេស to expand a street 78
រាយាឝៃុុេ។ to teach
រាយាឝៃុុេត្ត to show, exhibit 9
រាយាឝៃុុេ់, .of all 76
រាយាឝៃុុេុំ dessert 47
រាយាឝៃុុេុត្ត technique 78
រាយាឝៃុុំៃ to end, bring to a close 83
រាយាឝៃុុំី to enter 39
រាយាឝៃុុំាៃ to charge (electricity) 39
រាយាឝៃុុំងៀ send out, take out; show off
រាយាឝៃុុំំងៀ to heat, to warm
រាយាឝៃុុំឺ show, to project 40
រាយាឝៃុុំុ្មុ show a movie 40
រាយាឝៃុុំុៃ to start a fire 39
រាយាឝៃុុំៃ to tread or trample under foot 74
រាយាឝៃុុំៃៃ to transfer (of persons, property)
រាយាឝៃុុំៃៃៃ (Mil. and Adm.) 44
រាយាឝៃុុំៃៃ to grow 73
រាយាឝៃុុំៃៃៃ to make a bean sprout 73
រាយាឝៃុុំៃៃៃៃ little by little; along 74
រាយាឝៃុុំៃៃៃៃៃ along 63
រាយាឝៃុុំៃៃៃៃៃៃ along the river 63
រាយាឝៃុុំៃៃៃៃៃៃ doctor 78

បញ្ហូរ៉ុំ older sibling 23
បញ្ហូរ៉ុំៃ brothers and sisters; relative 23
បញ្ហូរ៉ុំៃៃ oldest sibling 26
to turn 31

to turn right 31

to turn left 31

to continue 82

to extend 81

a little bit 26

room 15

guest-room 27

living room 27

bedroom 27

servant's room 27

store room 27

bathroom 27

line, ruler 3

next 2

fortress 76

soup (made with rice) 30

to intend 44

foreign 47

plenty, many, abundant 47

primary education 81

bookstore 81

library 81

Poipet (place name) 38

to defeat 69

a throne 76

Bangkok 37

to shoot (firearms) 50

to hunt 43

bottom

Battambang (Province of Cambodia) 63

polite response particle used by men; yes 89

past-time indicator when placed before verb.

when placed after a verb, denotes ability to do something (translated as 'can')

Chinese food (meal) 47

cigarette, tobacco 30

French, France 25

Pali 53

father 23

Paris, France 23

passport 37

to beg for food; food offered to monks 68

close

to fill teeth 54

three 3

three thousand 52

beer 28

office, desk 27

feast; ceremony 48

Christmas 64

Tangtok (Exhibition Festival) 65

the Water Festival 65

ancient 45

Boston 46

the same size 62

but 23

how much? how many? 12
post-office 24
radio station 90
Cambodian radio station 90
to cremate 65
police 38
four 16
if 20
if you like 41
if I make a mistake 58
in that case 54
to open 3
drive a car 3
to drive fast (car) 45
tomato 46
mission 79
to be broken; to divide 72
to divide 72
a kind
some kind of 51
some kind of cold 51
eighty 23
to do the laundry 58
to sweep, clean 58
to throw, to drive a nail; pitch a ball 88
to print 88
to publish 88
apple 41
of all 71
to fill up 39
to study 67
to forget 40
to serve 57
to serve guests 56
patch a tire 39
husband 23
husband and wife 23
to complain 83
to exchange 39
change engines 39
to reserve, preempt; to be conservative, stuffy, particular; to hold onto, insist on 58
to proclaim, announce 87
people, population 71
people, population 86
to hurry 43
tool, utensil, instrument 77
instruments 77
musical instruments 77
country 65
neighbor country 72
homeland 69
President (of country) 69
wife 23
approximately 84
chief of state 65
to be careful 52
useful; purpose usefulness, importance 63
to disconnect 39
turn off the motor 39
history 50
length; long 71
skillful, clever 28

you're the one who knows how to choose dishes 47

a good (actor) 49

to speak, to say (polite) perhaps 64

the same 64

examination 81
to pass (exam) 54
to fail (exam) 84

box 38

a silver box 77

a powder box 77

silver, money 38

salary 60

sure 22

that's right 22

exact, true, sure 53

to wish, intend 87
to tell 5

temple, palace, ancient monument 35

Temple of Angkor Wat 35

man, boy 23

men in general 27

to use 8
to use, consume 88

to translate 6

post office 31

five 11

seven 13

six 11

dim (dim lights) 62

different, interesting 43

younger sibling 26

youngest sibling 26

aunt or uncle by marriage (older than one's parents) 26

younger sister 22

also, too 26

product 89

unstable, flimsy 38

dock (port) 61

map 11

However 27

star 62

to send 38

a cold (disease) 26

next to, against 84

house 41

which one? 41

Pharmacy 31

house (obsolete word) 23

a section, part 25

to change, to transfer 78

street, way, road 71

waterway 71

outcome; fruit

fruit 46

grape 46

lychees 58
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cambodian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ហែក់</td>
<td>to leap, to jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ប៉ែន</td>
<td>to skip a form(class)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ដោលស្អាត</td>
<td>to diffuse, broadcast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>សំណាក</td>
<td>news(broadcast)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ប្រាសាទ</td>
<td>market</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>អាស៊ីអាស៊ី</td>
<td>New Market</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ស្វាយស្វាយ</td>
<td>Old Market</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ស្លា</td>
<td>separate, different</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ការ្កុ</td>
<td>variety, diversity; different, various</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>អេ</td>
<td>egg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ប្រាប់</td>
<td>chicken egg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ពណ៌</td>
<td>color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ស្រុកទឹក</td>
<td>sky-blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ដឹក្រែ</td>
<td>blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ស្រុកស្រុក</td>
<td>red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ស្រុកដុំ</td>
<td>green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ស្រុកខ្យូ</td>
<td>black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ស្រុកក្រហ</td>
<td>yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ពណ៌ខ្មែរ</td>
<td>white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ពណ៌ស្រុក</td>
<td>purple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ពណ៌ធូរ</td>
<td>grey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ពណ៌ត្រី</td>
<td>brown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ពណ៌សែតុ</td>
<td>pink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ព្យាយាម</td>
<td>news</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្លែង</td>
<td>to surround, encircle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>បែន</td>
<td>to explain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ស្រៀម</td>
<td>bright</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>សោ</td>
<td>goat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ឈឺ</td>
<td>private</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ម៉ូសិនេូសូូ</td>
<td>sergeant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ជីវ្លួនូវខ្លួនូវ</td>
<td>chief sergeant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ម៉ូសិនេូសូូសែតុ</td>
<td>sgt. major</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ព័ត៌មាន</td>
<td>P.f.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ស្រី</td>
<td>shake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>កែវ</td>
<td>an upper garment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>រស់</td>
<td>to put on, hang up, wear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ភាពចំណារ</td>
<td>center, half-way point, half</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>រង្វាល</td>
<td>rank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>អ្វីជាក្រោយ?</td>
<td>what rank?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>រស់ចិញ្ចឹម</td>
<td>put on shoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>តើ</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ការអារម្មណ៍</td>
<td>commerce, trade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>រស់ចិញ្ចឹម</td>
<td>to spread over, cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ភាពចំណារច្រើន</td>
<td>all over, completely covering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ក្តះង</td>
<td>grade, mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>សោស្រែតុ</td>
<td>good grades</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ពិភពលេខ</td>
<td>the world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ប្រសាទ</td>
<td>flashlight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>រស់ចិញ្ចឹម</td>
<td>to eat (polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>មាំ</td>
<td>have a meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ជ្រើស</td>
<td>especially</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ពី</td>
<td>from, past (restricted usage)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>នៅ</td>
<td>when, since</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>អ្វីជាកាល?</td>
<td>what day? (in the past)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>អ្វីជាកា</td>
<td>what month? (in the past)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>អ្វីជាកាម៉ៃ</td>
<td>what year? (in the past)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ឈឺ</td>
<td>difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>បែនចុះ</td>
<td>because</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
two 90
two or three 90
two or three times 90
melodious 90
beard, mustache 30
to speak (used with a monk) 67
mattress, cushion 79
foam rubber mattress 79
skillful, clever, strong, good at, smart 38
family, lineage, stock; seedling 75
friend 21
time 30
breakfast 30
vacation, break 89
anytime 74
meal time 57
medicine (the subject) 37
dentist 54
nurse 54
a cup 38
corn, maize 58
stomach 51
youngest sibling 26
together; to agree 5
light-colored 62
hail 72
morning 24
to be sad, unhappy; to worry 52
oil, petroleum product
oil (engine) 39
gasoline 39
creek, canal, stream 71
forest
Saigon 40
because 29
border, frontier 71
god, Buddha 66
you (formal for a monk)
Buddhism 58
a throne 76
temple 33
to be scared 52
port 27
majority 27
percent 27
language 25
foreign language 47
novices (monks) 68
Burmese 21
village 63
geography 81
drinks 58
restaurant 50
annual ceremony in honor of one's ancestors 65
Cambodian Basic Course

Guest, invited 27
the honored guests 65
eye 52
hill, mountain 12
Phnom Penh 12
to taste 53
immediately, right away 20
clear, bright 41
ivory 80
light 31
red light 31
fire, electricity 39
electricity 68
the rain; to rain 37
music 33
to forget 22

Big (prefix) 34
Boulevard 34
University 25
Uncle younger than one's parent 26
Month 30
Shore 62
to have, there is, are, to possess, to be possessed by, to own 5
to have a lot of time 45
Why not? Of course 45
to happen to; have occasion to 45
to be rich 42
Chicken 42
Gold (metal and color) 38
Brand, trademark, mark 41
Mother 23
Engine, motor, machine 39
Air-conditioner 37
Friend 55
June 40
No, not 20
Not yet 20
Not very 20
Not very good 20
Ever, never 20
Didn't get to 20
Not only this 20
Don't have to, don't need 20
Not having much money 20
March 40
Aunt (younger than parent)
face, front, in front 27
in front of the station 27
front of the post office 32
in front of the palace 47
kind, variety, dish 75
status, function, duty 75
trade, profession 75
kind of subjects 84
general subjects 84
probably, undoubtedly, will/shall 31
first 37
first of all 37
before that 37
mosquito 52
motorbike; motor 39
hat 27
one 24
one hundred 24
few, scarce 33
one moment, a minute 43
a mouthful 38
a dozen 46
look at, watch, read 3
watch a movie 29
babysit 29
read palms 45
Mekong (river) 80
sky
how? why? 4
officer (military) 36
lesson 3
April 40
real, really, is it? Isn't it? 9
meter (unit of measure) 38
o'clock, hour, time of day
what time?
eight-thirty o'clock 30
mangosteen
once 24
mother 35
aunt (older than parent) 24
aunt (younger than parent) 26
one person 3
alone 40
twenty 23
yesterday 26
food 24
canned food 78
night time 24
to understand 4
kind, type 89
at the most
the earliest
at least
how? why?
at the latest 61
Gee: 46
slow 2
slowly 2
long (time) 54
Cambodian Basic Course

a very long time now 44
too long 36
Vietnamese
we, us, our 45
opinion, suggestion 79
to cry, weep 25
to find, to seek, search for 3
to earn a living 77
season
rainy season 52
the season of water receding 72
the season of water rising 71
state (political division); the state (government) 40
a cabinet minister 36
secretary 42
coup d'etat 42
vehicle
horse-drawn cart 56
a train 38
ox-drawn cart 38
of; belong to; thing 40
of the country 65
style, way, method, order 43
administration 70
itch (disease) 53
hundred 41
two hundreds 41
to be extinguished 41
to shine; shining 76
to care about; be busy 26
don't care about him 26
during, between, duration, interval 30
to live, be alive 57
to live; to be living; to be still living 69
afternoon 24
quick 88
without intermission; through 44
shallow 71
cordial 22
royal; time
civil service; government 23
(royal) capital 35
coronation (the translation "wedding" is an error) 65
independence 65
smooth 27
to count 20
every, each 86
everyday 86
radio 30
to bloom, flourish, rise 71
or, otherwise 13
isn't it?, right? 13
tumor 53
to push
Russian 21
body, shape, figure 11
drawing picture 11
animal statue 77

355
Glossary

物理学 84
舞蹈 77
to finish 5
then, already, just after that 5
retire, retired 23
to choose; to find 47
I found a dollar 47

故事 45
古代传说 45
现代故事 45
to learn, to study 3
hire a teacher; (during the vacation) 85
to study a prayer 68
to arrange, prepare 57
to have a wedding ceremony, get married 57
to arrange (it) my own way 79
prepare 27
prepare food 27
straighten 74
riel (Cambodian monetary unit) 38
restaurant 31
structure with a roof but no walls
movie theater 53
factory 72
oil refinery 72
sugar factory 72
theatre 53
second part of the lunar month 65
to dance 50

to try, taste 47
to sell 22
to sell vegetables 46
to erase 30
to wash the face 30
etc. 30
to leave; to say goodbye 68
to wash 30
to mix drinks 58
Lao 21
litre 38
to hear 2
money 31
when (conjunction) 20
to grow up 78
to steal 52
on 33
on top 33
to lift, lift up 19
raise the hand 19
yellow 3
fast, speed 43
clams 46
a number
to play, to do something for fun 27
to play ball 27
to play tennis 51
to gamble (card) 42
to swallow, to drink 51
you, Mister


teacher
monk 33
to jump 42
to parachute 42
play, drama 50
Bassac drama 50
modern plays 50
stupid, slow 41
evening, night 24
enough 2
"compartment house" (a kind of row house in which each unit consists of one large room and a kitchen) 79
good 2

field (land)
Veal Vong (name of a place) 24
vacation 83
Washington, U.S.A. 23
editorial 86
fine arts 77
November 40
subject, study, field of learning 67
technical subject 81
instead, again, back 5
the elementary certificate 82
secondary school 25
radio 87
monument; mansion 47
Independence Monument 47
engineering 81
engineer 81
whiskey 26
vacation
temple 33
Vientiane 37
long (of things) 14
palace 24

Pagoda, temple 27
Vat Phnom (name of a place) 33
Wat Preah Keo (name: Emerald Pagoda)
Wat Mnalom (name of place) 67
culture 21
good, superior (prefix)
major (military) 44
lieutenant colonel 44
colonel 44
it, he, she, they, (familiar) 23
to preach; to pray
to part the hair 43
to hit 31
to invade 69
to wire, to telegraph

white 16
activity 50
tattoo; rank 45

357
both sides 62
to hope 44
sign, symbol 62
certificate, diploma 83
advanced degree
diploma 83
high school
diploma 82
bean sprouts 46
hotel
animal, being(human or animal) 86
to spread out; to extend 75
a moment, while 36
sheet(of paper), leaf 38
inflated 39
inflated a tire 39
happy, pleasant, agreeable 46
happy, content 83
every 88
all; entirely 88
at present 70
these days; now 88
aspect; state of being; appearance 65
time 45
sea 46
to decide 60
sour soup 47
to praise, flatter 88
to write 9
nerve; vein 43
to remain, be left over;
remains 73
united(prefix) 40
U.S.A. 40
to try, to essay 28
university 78
meat 50
beef 46
lamb(mutton) 72
pork 46
chicken 72
public 25
to sow, broadcast 73
soap 30
National Museum 76
sarong(clothing worn at house) 77
hall 24
administrative unit composed of several villages 88
the military school 84
Pali School
Buddhist institute 66
Buddhist elementary school 67
the school of Fine Arts 77
District Hall 88
education, to study
comb 30
to comb(hair) 30
first 27
eat first 27
August 40
to eat (crude) 27
to take a meal 27
cycle, pedicab 37
motorcycle 72
horn, whistle 39
almost
almost as far as the eye can see
only then, no sooner 36
cherry 46
to be healthy: good health, happiness 70
health 86
How are you? 21
health care 80
pure 63
all (exclusively) 63
success 79
Swedish 47
to recite
silk 41
flower garden 27
to ask 5
to visit 70
Thai 21
Siem-reap (province name) 52
book 1
economics 81
horse 42
at all 19
to beg, ask for 43
excuse me 23
please come 43
important 26
stay, live 24
to stay 24
good luck; chance 42
question 5
ricket, letter 37
health card 47
cloth, dry goods; a kind of garment
plain silk sarong 77
variegated silk sarong 77
to test 36
for, use for, in order to 12
a pair 83
to use for; for the purpose of 82
garbage, trash 73
Sanskrit 67
cotton 38
Singapore 37
sugar 26
to know someone 28
to be quiet 62
silence, to keep silence 83
admirable 76
to listen 2
to regret, too bad 29
to blame 52
thin 43
king 76
embassy 77
station (railroad or radio) 63
Glossary

to stay; to be located 76

to touch 76

Stung-Treng (Province of Cambodia) 61
to fish 43
to transplant, set out 74

skin 72
shoe 27

bridge 32

copper 77

to think, believe 12
to be equal, even 62

secretary 44

spoon 38
to die 57
gentle 51
to put on a lower garment 26
to get dressed 27

monkey 42
to greet; greeting 64

mango 63

Svai Kieng (a Province of Cambodia) 42

vowel 8

fresh, charming; handsome 49
to have a quick bite (food) 29

liquor 28

wine 28

already 82
to untie, to detach 62
to be light (opposite of heavy) 45

lady, woman, girl 41

girls in general or women in general 27
district, country 12

abroad, foreign countries 37

Cambodia 12
countryside; rural area 88

unhusked rice 72

glutenous rice 75
dry-season-rice-paddy 72
rainy-season paddy 72

easy 1

already; to finish 33

It's up to you. 33

rice field 44
to water, sprinkle 72

an envelope, sheath 38

envelope (for a letter) 38
	nice; beautiful; clean 32

quite nice 32

What sort of thing? 15

what else? 42

tomorrow 37

shop, store, (large place of business)

restaurant 24

Indian store 41
cloth store 45
practice, drill, exercise 19
practice reading 19
to forbid 53
fifty 23
to dare 53
suitcase, trunk 37
hot (for hot pepper) 37
Hong Kong 37
sixty 23
sixty years 23
how? 71
to absorb, to drink up, to take up 74
to dry up, evaporate 74
to surpass, exceed 75
already; then 30
reason 30
what reason? 30
struggle, to swim 42
to swim 42
to call, to invite, to order 9
to order, beef with tomatoes 47
a lamp, headlight 39
pharmacy 52
a brake 39
hand-brake 39
foot-brake 39
a car 38
bus 83
a dozen 46
to go up 43
letter, consonant 8
electricity 75
rice (polished, uncooked) 72
when? 24
that time 57
revered person; classifier for monk 38
Angkor (name of the old capital) 24
to sit down 26
typewriter 58
English 12
to rub; to caress 76
wall, so, then, at that time, in that case 6
to invite; please 28
no, not 40
pardon 44
not to have, to be out of 37
article, composition 88
midnight 24
future 42
public health 86
to permit; permission 84
under-, vice- (prefix)
intimate or derogatory prefix

this one, this 41

that one, that 15

American 21

age, years, time from birth 23

how old are you? 23

Arab, Arabic 86

German 21

cloth, upper garment 27

lawyer 36

shirt 49

Asia

Southeast Asia 71

aspirin 52

eat, to take meals 24

take meals (formal) 24

not

not to have; to lack 37

what? 4

what ones? 4

things, goods, merchandise, food 27

Spanish 21

now

measles 53

a general (Mil) 44

example 83

memorial 65

for example, to suppose 83

May 40

laborious, hard-working; often

does, often did 33

industry 78

to press (clothes) 43
hotel 24
train (diesel) 38
at; as for, regarding 89
one
be to be private (not public) 87
an expert 82
independence 78
ambassador plenipotentiary 87
you (2nd person) 33
over there, there 11
other 10
various other 89
where? somewhere 89
opportunity 76
occasion 65
to allow; to give; for
lend
medicine; drug
pharmacy 80
father 35
father-in-law 21
uncle (older than parent)
uncle (younger than parent)
parents 35
watermelon 58
to row 76
rowboat 76
embassy 21
cotton 41
a clutch (car) 39
about, concerning 15
sugarcane 72
aunt or uncle (older than parent)
you; the one who, ... person
farmer (not rice) 71
nationalist 90
passenger 62
who? 43
boatmen; to run a boat
business 62
traveller 63
weaver 80
a cook 56
fisherman 62
technician 78
civil servant, government
official 42
dancer 77
salesman 54
farmer (grows rice only) 57
rural people; citizens of a
community or a country 89
what? 11